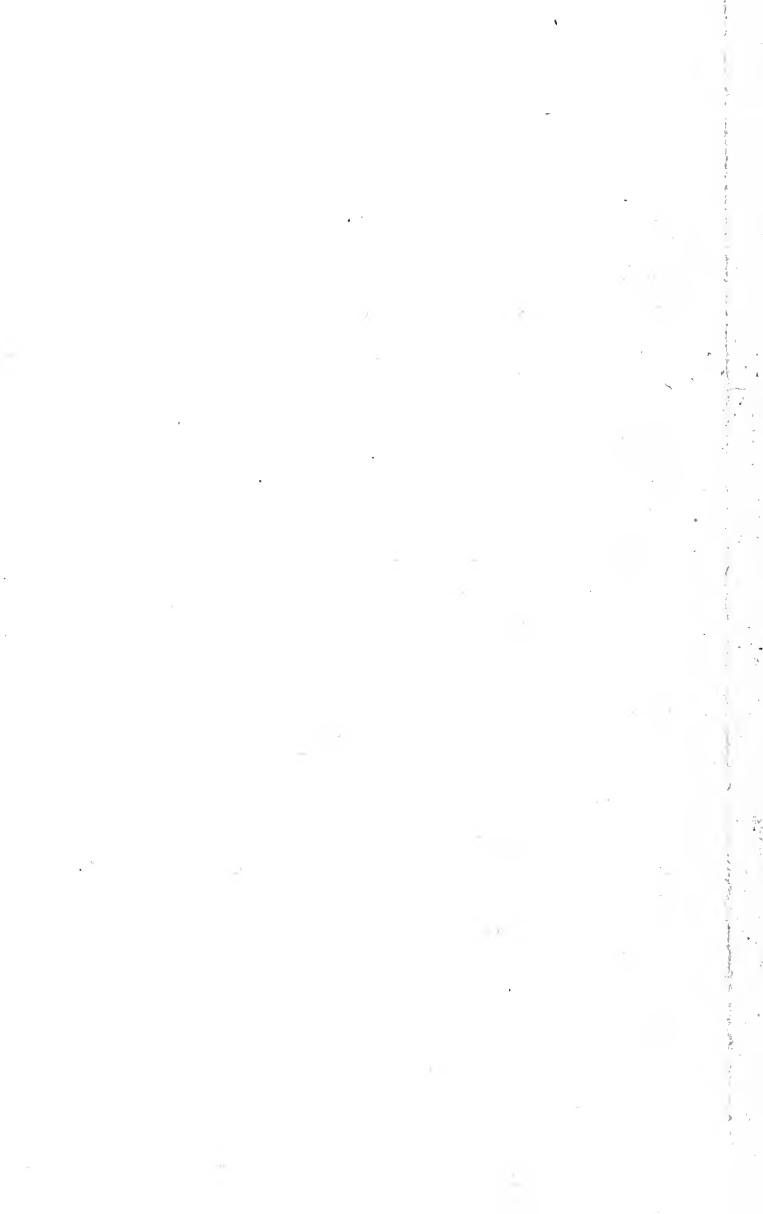


UC-NRLF



B 4 042 959













Heath's Modern Language Series

---

# ITALIAN GRAMMAR

BY

C. H. GRANDGENT

PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

*REVISED BY THE AUTHOR AND PROVIDED WITH  
NEW EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES*

BY


E. H. WILKINS

PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES IN  
THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

TO  
ALL



**COPYRIGHT, 1887 AND 1904**  
**By C. H. GRANDGENT**

**COPYRIGHT, 1915**  
**By D. C. HEATH & CO.**

2 A 4

**Printed in U. S. A.**

P-1111  
G.  
1115  
M.1112

## PREFACE

THIS volume is the result of an attempt to put into convenient form and the smallest possible compass all the grammar needed by ordinary students of Italian. Short as the book is, it contains some paragraphs which beginners will probably skip: the longer lists of words and endings and a great part of the chapters on suffixes and irregular verbs will be useful mainly for reference. While endeavoring to make my work represent primarily the language as it is spoken and written at the present day, I have tried to give also as many obsolete forms as readers of the poets will require.

It has been my aim throughout to make the rules clear for all classes of pupils, even for those ignorant of other foreign languages, provided they understand the technical words commonly used in grammars. With this object in view, I have ascribed to the Italian vowels the pronunciation of the English ones that are nearest to them; an accurate description of the Italian sounds would, I fear, prove confusing to beginners who have had no training in phonetics. It will be easy for the instructor to explain not only the vowels, but some of the consonants, and the division of words into syllables, much better than can be done in a book like this.

The authorities I have consulted most are the dictionaries of Fanfani, Rigutini and Fanfani, Fornari (*Nuovo Bazzarini*), and Tommaseo and Bellini. I have made but little use of other grammars; I am, however, indebted to Toscani for some ideas and a few of my examples. The chapters on

syntax, and the treatment of irregular verbs, pronouns, suffixes, and the plural of words in *-co* and *-go* are almost entirely the result of original work.

In conclusion, I wish to express my gratitude to Professor Nash, of Harvard, to my friend and teacher, Cav. Filippo Orlando, of Florence, and to the gentlemen who assisted me in correcting the proof-sheets; and I wish above all to thank Professor Sheldon, of Harvard, and Professor Bendelari, of Yale, without whose aid and encouragement I should scarcely have ventured to offer this book to the public.

CAMBRIDGE, September, 1887.

#### NOTE TO THE REVISED EDITION

So thoroughly has the old Grammar been overhauled by Professor Wilkins and me that it now presents itself almost as a new book. The original Italian texts and bits of English prose for translation have disappeared; and in place of the set of Lessons and Exercises added to the book in 1904, Professor Wilkins has furnished a fresh series, better and more abundant than the matter it supplants. A careful revision of the rules and examples has resulted in some improvement of the former and many additions to the latter. Use has been made of the system of grammatical nomenclature recently recommended by the American committee entrusted with the study of that subject. Not least among the advantages of this edition is the marked gain in typographical clearness.

CAMBRIDGE, March, 1915.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	1
Sounds, Spelling, Accent, Syllabication, 1. — Additional Notes, 6. — Inflections of the Voice, 9.	
ARTICLES . . . . .	11
The Definite Article, 11. — The Indefinite Article, 14.	
NOUNS. . . . .	15
Gender, 15. — Number, 17.	
ADJECTIVES . . . . .	20
Gender and Number, 20. — Comparison, 22.	
AUGMENTATIVES; DIMINUTIVES; NUMERALS . . . . .	24
Augmentatives and Diminutives, 24. — Numerals, 26.	
DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	29
PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	35
Conjunctive Forms, 35. — Disjunctive Forms, 40. — Forms of Address, 43.	
AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	45
Auxiliaries of Voice and Tense ( <i>êssere, avére</i> ), 45. — Modal Auxiliaries, 51.	
REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS. . . . .	52
The Regular Verb, 53. — The Irregular Verb, 57.	
MOODS AND TENSES . . . . .	61
Infinitive and Participle, 61. — Past, Present, and Future, 63. — Past Future or Conditional, 65. — Subjunctive, 65.	
CONJUNCTIONS; PREPOSITIONS; ADVERBS . . . . .	68
Conjunctions, 68. — Prepositions, 70. — Adverbs, 73.	
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	76
LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .	80
First Conjugation, 81. — Second Conjugation, 82. — Third Conjugation, 85. — Fourth Conjugation, 90.	

	PAGE
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS . .	92
LESSONS AND EXERCISES . . . . .	97
ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	155
ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY . . . . .	171
INDEX . . . . .	181



# ITALIAN GRAMMAR

## PRONUNCIATION

1. The Italian alphabet has the same letters as the English, except that **k**, **w**, **x**, and **y** do not occur in native words in modern Italian.

2. The Italians distinguish seven vowels: **a**, close **e**, open **e**, **i**, close **o**, open **o**, **u**; to these may be added an intermediate **e** and **o**, used in unaccented syllables. Every vowel has a clear sound, no matter what may be its position in the word. It is never obscured; and it never tends, as do the English long vowels, to become a diphthong.

Italian vowels are all pronounced rather quickly; hence there is but little difference in quantity between accented and unaccented sounds. English-speaking students must carefully avoid drawling the accented and slighting the unaccented syllables; they should try to give to every Italian vowel about the length of **i** in 'bitter.'

**a** is nearly like *a* in 'father': as *fava*, *canna*, *cassa*, *palla*.

**e** close is nearly like *a* in 'fate': as *beve*, *vere*, *stelle*, *messe*.

**e** open may be formed by trying to pronounce *e* in 'bell' with the mouth very wide open: as *bella*, *amena*, *fera*, *pensa*.

**i** is nearly like *ee* in 'feet': as *miri*, *vini*, *fissi*, *spilli*.

**o** close is nearly like *o* in 'mope': as *dopo*, *dove*, *bollo*, *sotto*.

**o** open is nearly like *aw* in 'saw' pronounced with the mouth wide open: as *no*, *odi*, *poi*, *donna*.

**u** is nearly like *oo* in 'boot': as *una*, *cura*, *nulla*, *ruppi*.

(a) The letters **i** and **u** are sometimes used to represent consonant sounds (see 4); but in formulating rules they are always counted as vowels.

3. As close and open vowels are not distinguished in spelling, some rules are necessary:

1. Unaccented **e** and **o** are intermediate between close and open: as *mare*, *sea*; *amo*, *I love*.

2. **e** and **o** are close in all monosyllables<sup>1</sup> ending in a consonant: as *con*, *with*; *non*, *not*; *per*, *for*.

3. In monosyllables<sup>1</sup> and oxytones<sup>2</sup> ending in a vowel, final **e** is close, final **o** is open: as *che*, *what*; *me*, *me*; *re*, *king*; *credè*, *he believed*; *perchè*, *why*; *do*, *I give*; *Po*, *Po*; *sarò*, *I shall be*; *andò*, *he went*.

EXCEPTIONS: (a) Final **e** is open in *è*=*is*, *re*=*re*, interjections (as *aimè*, *alas*; *chè*, *nonsense*), proper names (as *Noè*, *Noah*), and foreign words (as *caffè*, *coffee*). (b) Final **o** is close in *lo* and *o*.

4. Accented **e** and **o** are always open in the groups **ie** and **uo**: as *piede*, *foot*; *fuoco*, *fire*. **e** and **o** standing for **ie** and **uo** are open: as *ven*=*viene*, *he comes*; *cor*=*cuore*, *heart*.

5. In words that have always formed a part of the spoken language, accented **e** is nearly always close when it represents Latin *ē* or *ī*, open when it represents Latin *ě* or *ae*; accented **o** is nearly always close when it represents Latin *ō* or *ū*, open when it represents Latin *ǒ* or *au*. In book words accented **e** and **o** are usually open.

In all cases not covered by the first three rules, the quality of **e** and **o** will be marked in this book, an acute accent (') denoting the close, a circumflex (^) the open sound: as *avére*, *to have*; *méno*, *less*; *tiène*, *he holds*; *liêto*, *happy*; *poêta*, *poet*; *ôra*, *hour*; *mólto*, *much*; *buôno*, *good*; *pôco*, *little*; *môto*, *motion*.

4. **B, f, m, p, q, v** are pronounced as in English.

**c**, before **e** or **i**, sounds like *ch* in 'chin'; elsewhere it is always like English *k*: as *cima*, *top*; *cóme*, *how*; *dólce*, *sweet*.

<sup>1</sup> Not including shortened forms of words that regularly have more than one syllable.

<sup>2</sup> Words accented on the last syllable.

**g**, before **e** or **i**, sounds like *g* in 'gem'; elsewhere it is always like *g* in 'go': as **gatto**, *cat*; **gênte**, *people*; **spingi**, *push*.

(a) A **cc** or a **gg** before **e** or **i** has merely the sound of *ch* in 'chin' or *g* in 'gem' prolonged: as **facce**, *faces*; **légge**, *law*.

**d**, **l**, **n**, **t** are pronounced further forward in the mouth than in English; the tip of the tongue should touch the back of the upper front teeth: as **alto**, *high*; **dato**, *given*; **luna**, *moon*; **nudo**, *naked*; **tuôno**, *thunder*.

**h** is always silent: as **ahi**, *oh!* **ha**, *he has*.

**i**, unaccented, before a vowel, sounds like English *y*: as **iêri**, *yesterday*; **paio**, *pair*; **più**, *more*. In the groups **cia**, **cio**, **ciu**, **gia**, **gio**, **giu**, an unaccented **i** serves only to show that the **c** or **g** is soft: as **faccia**, *face*; **guancia**, *cheek*; **ciò**, *that*; **giù**, *down*; **mangia**, *eat*; **raggio**, *ray*.

**j** is merely another way of writing **i**.

**n** before a **q** or a hard **c** or **g** has the sound of English *ng*: as **banca** (bang-ka), *bank*; **dunque** (dung-kwe), *therefore*; **lungo** (lung-go), *long*.

**r** is always rolled, the point of the tongue vibrating against the teeth: as **caro**, *dear*; **rósso**, *red*; **per**, *for*. When **r** is double or followed by a consonant, the trill is prolonged: as **carro**, *cart*; **burro**, *butter*; **marrône**, *chestnut*; **carne**, *meat*; **pôrta**, *door*.

**s** is generally pronounced nearly like English *s* in 'see,' but with a somewhat sharper sound: as **sô**, *I know*; **spillo**, *pin*.

Initial **s** before a sonant (**b**, **d**, **g**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, **v**) has a sound intermediate between **s** and English *z*: as **sdrucio-lare**, *to slip*; **slitta**, *sleigh*.

A single **s** between vowels has, in most words, the sound of English *z*: as **caso**, *case*; **cáusa**, *cause*; **viso**, *face*. But in the following cases it is pronounced like *s* in 'see,' 'mason':

(a) In **annusare**, **ásino**, **casa**, **Chiusi**, **côsa**, **così**, **desidêrio**, **naso**, **parasito**, **péso**, **Pisa**, **pisêllo**, **pôsa**, **ripôso**, **riso**, **susina**, and their derivatives, and in some uncommon words.

(b) After the prefixes **de-**, **di-**,<sup>1</sup> **pre-**, **pro-**, **re-**, **ri-**, **tra-**<sup>1</sup>: as **desistere**, **diségno**, **presumere**, **proseguire**, **reservare**, **risolvere**, **trasudare**.

(c) In the adjective ending **-oso** and the adjective and substantive ending **-ese**: as **noioso**, *troublesome*; **inglése**, *English*; **mése**, *month*. But in **cortése**, **francése**, **lucchése**, **marchése**, **paése**, **paiése**, the **s** is like English *z*.

(d) In the past absolute and past participle of **chiêdere**, **chiúdere**, **nascôndere**, **pôrre**, **râdere**, **ridere**, **rimanére**, **rispôndere**, **rôdere**, and all verbs in **-êndere**; and in their compounds and derivatives: as **chiêsi**, **socchiuso**, **nascóse**, **rispósero**, **rasóio**, **rimase**, **corrispósi**, **rósero**, **accési**, **réso**, **scésa**.

EXCEPTIONS to this rule are **deridere**, verbs in **-clúdere**, and derivatives of **rôdere**.

**u**, unaccented, before a vowel, sounds like English *w*: as **buôno**, *good*; **guardare**, *to look*; **può**, *he can*.

**z** and **zz** are generally pronounced like a long and vigorous *ts*: as **alzare**, *to lift*; **azióne**, *action*; **prêzzo**, *price*; **zío**, *uncle*.

In the following cases, however, **z** and **zz** sound like a prolonged *dz*:

(a) In **azzurro**, **dozzina**, **mêzzo**, **pranzo**, **ribrêzzo**, **romanzo**, **zêlo**, and many less common words.

(b) In verbs in **-izzare** (as **utilizzare**, *to utilize*); except **attizzare**, **dirizzare**, **guizzare**, **rizzare**, **stizzare**, and their compounds, and a few uncommon words.

## 5. The following combinations are to be noted:

**ch** (used only before **e** and **i**) is always like English *k*: as **fichi** (plural of **fico**, *fig*). **sch** is like *sk*: as **schérzo**, *sport*.

**gh** (used only before **e** and **i**) is always like English *g* in 'go': as **aghi** (plural of **ago**, *needle*).

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confounded with **dis-**, **tras-**: **disonóre**, **trasandare**.

**gli** (written **gl** if the following vowel be **i**) is nearly like English *lli* in 'million': as *figlio, son; figli, sons*.

But in *Ánglia*, *geroglífico*, *glicerina*, *negligere* and its derivatives, and a few uncommon words borrowed from the Greek or Latin, **gl** is like English *gl*.

**gn** is nearly like *ni* in 'onion': as *ógni, every*.

**qu** is always like *kw*: as *quésto, this*.

**sc** before **e** and **i** is nearly like *sh* in 'ship': as *uscire, to go out*.

Before all other letters it is pronounced *sk*: as *scuôla, school; schérno, contempt*.

6. Every letter in Italian is distinctly and separately sounded; the only exceptions are **h**, silent **i** (see 4), and the combinations mentioned in 5.

*arte, art.*

*firma, signature.*

*furto, theft.*

*giórno, day.*

*vêrso, toward.*

*andái, I went.*

*áura, breeze.*

*bugíe, lies.*

*Eurôpa, Europe.*

*miêi, my.*

*paúra, fear.*

*sentíi, I felt.*

*nói, we.*

*pôi, then.*

*suôi, his.*

Where a double consonant is written, both letters must be sounded, the first at the end of the preceding, the second at the beginning of the following syllable:

*anno, year.*

*méssô, put.*

*babbo, father.*

*quéllo, that.*

*fatto, done.*

*bócca, mouth.*

For **rr**, **zz**, and soft **cc** and **gg**, see 4.

**l**, **m**, **n**, and **r**, when preceded by an accented vowel and followed by another consonant, are prolonged:

*alto (all-to), high.*

*sêmpre (sêmm-pre), always.*

*tanto (tann-to), so much.*

*parte (parr-te), part.*

7. The accent is nearly always the same as in Latin. In this book it will always be noted. Of the signs written here, students need use only the grave (`), which is placed on the last syllable of oxytones and on some monosyllables; Italian writers do not agree as to the use of the other marks; many now use the acute, and not the grave, on final **e**.

8. Italian words are divided in such a way that, if possible, every syllable shall begin with a consonant:

ta-vo-lí-no, <i>table.</i>	mêz-zo, <i>half.</i>
frat-tán-to, <i>meanwhile.</i>	các-cia, <i>hunt.</i>
al-l' uô-mo, <i>to the man.</i>	ôg-gi, <i>to-day.</i>
nar-rá-re, <i>to relate.</i>	po-ê-ta, <i>poet.</i>

In the groups **s**+consonant, consonant+**r**, those mentioned in 5, and **cl**, **fl**, **gl**, **pl**, both consonants belong to the following syllable. **i**=*y* and **u**=*w* go with the following vowel; **ái**, **áu**, **ei**, **eu**, **oi** are not separated.

fê-sta	ca-stí-ghi	ri-flêt-te-re
te-á-tro	del-l' ác-qua	miêi
a-vrò	in-chiô-stro	al-l' áu-ra
bi-só-gno	mi-glió-re	tuôi

## ADDITIONAL NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION

[The numbers prefixed to the following notes refer to the paragraphs of the foregoing chapter.]

1. The Tuscan names of the letters are:

a	é	i	ênne	êrre	vu or vi
bi	êffe	jé or i lúngo	ô	êsse	zêta (with z pronounced <i>dz</i> )
ci	gi	êlle	pi	ti	
di	acca	êmme	cu	u	

They do not change in the plural. Their gender is not fixed; in general those ending in **-a** or **-e** are considered as feminine, the others as masculine. **K**, **x**, **y** are *cáppa*, *íccase*, *ípsilon*, all masculine.

2. (a) The sounds **á**, **ê**, **ô**, followed by a single consonant, are somewhat longer than the other vowels: for instance, in *dáto*, *fêro*, *ôvo* the accented **a**, **e**, **o** are longer than in *dáttero*, *véro*, *ôve*. Final accented vowels sound particularly short: as in *amò*, *beltà*, *caffè*.

(b) In forming **i** the mouth should be made as broad as possible from side to side. For **u** and **ó** the lips should be puckered. For **a** and **ê** the mouth should be opened very wide.

3. (a) If an adverb in **-mênte** is formed from an adjective containing **ê** or **ô**, this vowel has, in the adverb, a secondary accent, and retains its open sound: as (**brêve**) **brêvemênte**, *briefly*; (**nôbile**) **nôbilmênte**, *nobly*. Furthermore, **ê** and **ô** retain their quality in seeming compounds that consist, in reality, of two or more separate words: as **tostochê** = **tôstochê** = **tôsto che**, *as soon as*.

(b) Past absolute forms and past participles in **-esi**, **-eso**, **-osi**, **-oso** have a close **e** or **o**; except **chiêsi** (also **chiési**), **esplôsi**, **esplôso**, **lêso**.

(c) In the suffixes **-eccio** (**-a**), **-esco** (**-a**), **-ese**, **-essa**, **-etto** (**-a**), **-ezzo** (**-a**), **-mente**, and **-mento** the **e** is always close; while in the diminutive suffix **-ello** (**-a**), and in the endings **-ente**, **-enza**, **-erio** (or **-ero**), and **-esimo** (**-a**) it is open: as **inglêse**, *English*; **probabilmênte**, *probably*; **prudênte**, *prudent*; **ventêsim**, *twentieth*.

(d) In the endings **-oio**, **-one**, **-ore**, and in the suffix **-oso** (**-a**) the **o** is close; while in the ending **-orio**, and in **-occio** (**-a**), **-otto** (**-a**), and **-ozzo** (**-a**), used as suffixes to nouns or adjectives, it is open: as **vassôio**, *tray*; **amôre**, *love*; **romitôrio**, *hermitage*; **casôtta**, *good-sized house*.

(e) In the following cases accented **e** or **o** may have either the close or the open sound: in **Giorgio**, **maestra**, **maestro**, **nego** (from **negâre**), **neve**, **organo**, **scendere**, **senza**, **siete** and **sono** (from **ês-sere**), **spegnere**, **Stefano**, **vendere**; and in the past future endings **-esti**, **-emmo**, **-este**. The present subjunctive forms **dîeno**, **sîeno**, **stîeno** are pronounced also **diêno**, **siêno**, **stiêno**.

(f) In poetry we often find **ê** for **iê**, **ô** for **uô**: as **vên**=**viêne**, *he comes*; **côr**=**cuôre**, *heart*. Simple **ô** for **uô** is very common in modern spoken Tuscan: as **bôno**=**buôno**, *good*; **nôvo**=**nuôvo**, *new*.

4. **c.** (a) Between two vowels, of which the second is **e** or **i**, single **c** and single **g** are, in ordinary Tuscan speech, pronounced respectively like *sh* in 'ship' and *si* in 'vision': as **páce**, *peace*; **stagión**, *season*.

(b) Between two vowels, of which the second is **a**, **o**, or **u**, a single **c** or a **q** is, in popular Tuscan speech, sounded nearly like English *h*: as **poco** (**pôho**), *little*; **di questa cosa** (**di hwésta hôsa**), *of this thing*. This pronunciation is regarded as inelegant.

**j.** Some writers use **j**, except after a consonant, for the **i** that is pronounced **y**: as **jeri** for **iêri**, *yesterday*; **pajo** for **páio**, *pair*. It is sometimes used also for final **i** in the plural of words in unaccented **-io**: as **specchj** (also **specchî** and occasionally **specchii**) for **spêcchi**, *mirrors*, plural of **spêcchio**.

**z.** Aside from verbs in **-izzáre**, **z** and **zz** have the value *dz* in the following words and their derivatives:

arzillo	frizzo	magazzino	romanzo	zêlo
azzurro	garzone	mânzo	ronzio	zenft
barzellétta	gazzella	mêzzo	rôzzo	zêro
bizza	gazzétta	orizzônte	zaffiro	zêta
brézza	gônzo	ôrzo	zaffrone	zínco
brônzo	Lâzzaro	pênzolo	zanzára	zodiaco
donzella	lazzaréto	prânzo	zêbra	zôlla
dozzina	lâzzo	ribrêzzo	zêffiro	zôna

also in all derivatives of the Greek *zoos*, and in many uncommon words.

5. In pronouncing **gli** and **gn** the point of the tongue should remain behind the lower teeth: as **fíglío**, *son*; **ógni**, *every*.

6. If one of the words mentioned below, or any oxytone ending in a vowel, is closely followed by a word beginning with a consonant, this consonant is, in Tuscany, generally pronounced double. The words are:<sup>1</sup>

a	dì, <i>day</i>	giù	o <sup>4</sup>	sópra
che	di', <i>say</i>	ha	più	sta <sup>2</sup>
chi	e	ho	qua	sto
ciò	è	ínfra	quálche	su
cóme	fa <sup>2</sup>	íntra	quí	te <sup>3</sup>
cóntra	fè, <i>faith</i>	là	re	tra
da	fe'=féce	lì	sa	tre
dà, <i>gives</i>	fo	ma	se, <i>if</i>	tu
da', <i>give</i>	fra	me <sup>3</sup>	sè	va <sup>2</sup>
do	fu	mo'=môdo	sì	vo=vádo
dóve	già	nè	so	vo'=vôglio

<sup>1</sup> The materials for this list were taken from D'Ovidio's article in Gröber's *Grundriß der romanischen Philologie*, I, p. 496 (2d ed., p. 644).

<sup>2</sup> Both the imperative sing. and the pres. ind. third sing.

<sup>3</sup> The disjunctive form.

<sup>4</sup> Both the conjunction *or* and the interrogative particle.



**verrà da me dománi** (verráddamméddománi), *he will come to my house to-morrow*. In such cases **c** is, of course, never pronounced like *h* (see 4, **c**, (b)).

## INFLECTIONS OF THE VOICE

1. Italian speech is at once smoother and less monotonous than American: it is less interrupted by breathings, and it has far greater variations of pitch. In order to speak or read Italian well, an American must learn to breathe in speaking as he does in singing; he must inhale deeply at the beginning of the clause, and not stop again until he reaches the end of it. The following directions may be of use; they are based on the Tuscan pronunciation, and particularly on that of Siena.

2. (a) The simplest inflection in a declarative sentence is as follows: at the beginning the voice is pitched low; it rises in the middle (in earnest conversation often to a falsetto), and falls again at the end. The most emphatic word generally receives the highest tone; if there are no words after it to complete the cadence, the first words of the phrase are often repeated at the end: as **me lo dicono tútti me lo dicono**, *they all tell me so*, where the **u** of **tútti** is an octave higher than the beginning and the close of the sentence.

(b) When there is a pause on some not particularly emphatic word before the main verb, that word has a slight circumflex accent, the voice rising about one semitone and falling about three: as **fuôri di città** ^ **c' è úna bellíssima vîlla** \, *outside the city there's a beautiful villa*, where **bellíssima** has the high pitch, and the **a** of **città** has the circumflex. This accent is generally heard whenever modifying clauses or phrases precede the main clause.

(c) Almost all declarative sentences are made up chiefly of these two inflections, the long rise and fall and the short circumflex. Americans must avoid breaking up their sentences by meaningless falling tones. The fall occurs in Italian, as in English, on a very emphatic word, and at the end of a sentence. It is used, also, with a verb of saying or thinking, followed by a direct quotation;

and with any word or phrase used as a vocative, except in loud calling (see 4, *b*): as **allóra** **chiáma** **Alfrédo** **e** **gli** **díce\**: **Bambíno\**, **dím****mi** **la** **verità\**, where the syllables **fre**, **bam**, and **dim** have the highest pitch.

3. (a) Questions to which the answer may be 'yes' or 'no' have either one of two circumflex accents: in the first the voice rises about five semitones and falls one; in the second, which is sometimes used in reading and in polite phrases, the voice rises and falls about an octave. Ex.: **l'hái vísto?** *have you seen him?* where the pitches of **l'hái**, **vi**, and **sto** may be represented by the notes *do*, *fa*, *mi*; **ha bên dormíto?** *did you sleep well?* where **mi** is an octave higher than **dor** and **to**. The former accent may be heard in the Irish pronunciation of English.

(b) These inflections are nearly always confined to the last few syllables of the sentence. In some questions, however, they appear twice, generally occurring first on the verb; and occasionally the circumflex on the verb is the only one.

(c) Questions that cannot be answered by 'yes' or 'no' usually begin high, the pitch depending on the emphasis. The voice then falls, but generally rises again at the last syllable, going up about three semitones: as **o cóme\ hái fáto\?** *how did you do it?* This accent is common among the Irish, and may be heard in England. The final rise is, however, often omitted, especially in very short sentences and in polite phrases: as **cóme sta\?** *how do you do?*

4. (a) Exclamations of surprise begin very high, and sink rapidly: as **sênti\!** *no!* **un affár di niênte\!** *you don't say so!*<sup>1</sup> where **un** has the main stress; **per mío bácco!** *I want to know!*<sup>1</sup> with the accent on **per**.

(b) In calling to persons at a distance, the Tuscans sing rather than speak; the usual tune is *do*, *la*, *sol*, the accented syllable being highest: as **Agostína!** *Augustine!* **partênza!** *all aboard!*

<sup>1</sup> Popular New England equivalents.

## ARTICLES

9. The article is not declined, but it agrees with its noun in gender and number.

## THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

## 10. Masculine:

(a) Sing. **il**, pl. **i**, before a word beginning with any consonant except **s** impure<sup>1</sup> and **z**.

(b) Sing. **lo**, pl. **gli**, before a vowel or **s** impure or **z**.<sup>2</sup>

Before a vowel **lo** becomes **l'**; **gli** becomes **gl'** before **i**.

**il** pádre, *the father*.

**lo** stéssu pádre, *the same father*.

**lo** sciáme, *the swarm*.

**lo** zío, *the uncle*.

**l'** uômo, *the man*.

**l'** insêtto, *the insect*.

**i** pádri, *the fathers*.

**gli** stéssi pádri, *the same fathers*.

**gli** sciámi, *the swarms*.

**gli** zii, *the uncles*.

**gli** uômini, *the men*.

**gl'** insêtti, *the insects*.

## 11. Feminine:

Sing. **la**, pl. **le**.

Before a vowel **la** becomes **l'**; **le** becomes **l'** before **e**.

**la** mádre, *the mother*.

**l'** óra, *the hour*.

**l'** érba, *the herb*.

**le** mádri, *the mothers*.

**le** óre, *the hours*.

**l'** érbe, *the herbs*.

12. When the definite article is preceded by one of the prepositions **di**, **da**, **a**, **in**, **con**, **su**, **per**, the article and prepo-

<sup>1</sup> That is, **s** followed by another consonant.

<sup>2</sup> **Li** is sometimes used for **gli**. Some writers use **il**, **i** before **z** and before **sci-** or **sci-**. In poetry **lo** is often used for **il**.

sition are generally contracted into one word, as shown in the following table (*con*, *per* are often uncontracted<sup>1</sup>):

	il	i	lo	gli	la	le	l'
<i>di, of</i>	del	déi or de'	déllo	dégli	délla	délle	dell'
<i>da, by</i>	dai	dái or da'	dállo	dágli	dállla	dálle	dall'
<i>a, to</i>	al	ái or a'	állo	ágli	állla	álle	all'
<i>in, in</i>	nei	néi or ne'	néllo	négli	nélla	nélle	nell'
<i>con, with</i>	col	cói or co'	cóllo	cógli	cólla	cólle	coll'
<i>su, on</i>	sul	súi or su'	súllo	súgli	súlla	súlle	sull'
<i>per, for</i>	pei	péi or pe'	per lo	per gli	per la	per le	per l'

del pádre, *of the father.*

állo spêcchio, *to the mirror.*

cólla mádre, *with the mother.*

sull' uômo, *on the man.*

dái pádri, *by the fathers.*

négli spêcchi, *in the mirrors.*

cólle mádri, *with the mothers.*

per gli uômini, *for the men.*

(a) The word *some* is frequently rendered in Italian by *di* with the definite article. This is called the *partitive* construction.

Dátemi del vino.

*Give me some wine.*

Délle bèle còse.

*Some fine things.*

**13.** In the following cases the definite article is used in Italian, though not in English:

(a) Before the possessive adjectives:

Il nôstro giardíno.

*Our garden.*

I suôi fratèlli.

*His brothers.*

When, however, the possessive qualifies an otherwise unmodified noun in the singular expressing relationship, the article is generally omitted: as *mía mádre*, *my mother*. For a fuller statement, see 45, a.

<sup>1</sup> Some writers, especially poets, prefer to keep other prepositions separate from the article.

(b) Before an abstract noun or one denoting a whole class; but not before one designating a part of a class:

L' uòmo propóne.	<i>Man proposes (i.e., all mankind).</i>
I fióri náscono dal séme.	<i>Flowers spring from the seed (i.e., all flowers).</i>
La môrte è il peggióre déi máli.	<i>Death is the worst of evils (i.e., death in general, and all evils).</i>

BUT

Il mío giardíno è tútto fioríto; rôse, gígli, viðe mán-dano un odóre soáve.	<i>My garden is all in flower; roses, lilies, violets send forth a sweet fragrance (i.e., some roses, etc.).</i>
---	--

(c) Before a noun and adjective used either in a specific or in a general (but not in a partitive) sense:

L' áнно scórso.	<i>Last year (i.e., the last year).</i>
Il pòvero Luígi non viðe.	<i>(The) poor Lewis doesn't come.</i>
Gli uòmini buòni.	<i>Good men (i.e., all good men).</i>

BUT

Hò trováto dappertútto uòmini buòni.	<i>I have found (some) good men everywhere.</i>
--------------------------------------	---

(d) Before a title followed by a proper name:

La regína Vittória.	<i>Queen Victoria.</i>
Il sígnór Brúni.	<i>Mr. Brown.</i>

It is not used, however, before **Don**, **Messêr**, and **Ser**.

(e) Before family names; often before familiar given names of women; occasionally before familiar given names of men:

Il Biáncchi è môrto.	<i>White is dead.</i>
La Pátti cánta.	<i>Patti sings.</i>
Conósco l' Olívia.	<i>I know Olivia.</i>
Viène il Tònio.	<i>Tony is coming.</i>

(f) Before names of provinces, countries, and continents:

la Toscána, <i>Tuscany.</i>	all' Itália, <i>to Italy.</i>
la Svízzera, <i>Switzerland.</i>	per l' Euròpa, <i>for Europe.</i>

But the article is omitted after **in** in phrases that denote going to or dwelling in a country; and often after **di** or **in** when the

preposition with the name of a country is equivalent to an adjective of nationality:

Vádo in Germânia.	<i>I go to Germany.</i>
Rimángo in Frância.	<i>I remain in France.</i>
La regína d' Inghiltêrra.	<i>The queen of England (i.e., the English queen).</i>
Il víno di Spágna.	<i>The wine of Spain (i.e., Spanish wine).</i>
Il teátro in Itália.	<i>The drama in Italy (i.e., the Italian drama).</i>

The article is not used regularly with names of cities: as *vedrémo Róma*, *we shall see Rome*. *La Spêzia*, however, has the article; and so have a few others.

In all the above cases (beginning with **13, a**) the article, unless it would be employed in English, is omitted when the noun is used as a vocative or is modified by a numeral or a pronominal adjective. It is often omitted in lists.

Signóra Mónti, cóme sta?	<i>Mrs. Monti, how do you do?</i>
Itália, ti rivédo.	<i>Italy, I see thee again.</i>
Viêni, amíco mío.	<i>Come, my friend.</i>
Dúe bellíssimi cáni.	<i>Two very fine dogs.</i>
Quésta súa ôpera.	<i>This work of his.</i>
Ha paréechi vízi.	<i>He has several bad habits.</i>
Féde, speránza, carità.	<i>Faith, hope, and charity.</i>

## THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

### 14. Masculine:

(a) **Un** before a vowel or any consonant except **s** impure and **z**.

(b) **Uno** before **s** impure or **z**.<sup>1</sup>

<b>un</b> pádre, <i>a father.</i>	<b>un</b> uômo, <i>a man.</i>
<b>un</b> anêllo, <i>a ring.</i>	<b>úno</b> spêcchio, <i>a mirror.</i>
<b>úno</b> sciáme, <i>a swarm.</i>	<b>úno</b> zío, <i>an uncle.</i>

Note that masculine **un** before a vowel has no apostrophe.

<sup>1</sup> Some writers use **un** before **z** and before **sce-** or **sci-**.

## 15. Feminine:

Úna, which becomes un' before a vowel.

úna mádre, *a mother.*

un' óra, *an hour.*

16. In the following cases the indefinite article, though expressed in English, is omitted in Italian:

(a) Before a predicate noun expressing occupation, condition, rank, or nationality, and not accompanied by an adjective.

Égli è poêta, *he is a poet.*

Sóno marchése, *I am a marquis.*

Siête italiáno, *you are an Italian.*

È mêdico, *he is a doctor.*

(b) Generally before an antecedent (of a relative clause) used in apposition to a preceding noun modified by a definite article or a demonstrative pronoun.

L' Árno, fiúme che travêrsa  
Firênze.

*The Arno, a river which traverses  
Florence.*

(c) After **da** meaning *as, like, or for*. See 79, g.

Da uômo.

*Like a man.*

## NOUNS

17. Italian nouns are not declined. Possession is denoted by the preposition **di**:

Lo spêchchio di mío pádre.

*My father's looking-glass.*

## GENDER

18. There are no neuter nouns in Italian.<sup>1</sup>

Nouns denoting males and females keep their natural gender; except **creatúra**, *creature*; **guída**, *guide*; **guárdia**,

<sup>1</sup> Latin neuters become masculine in Italian; masculines and feminines retain their Latin gender. This rule has very few exceptions.

*guard*; *persóna*, *person*; *sentinèlla*, *sentinel*; *spía*, *spy*; *staf-fétta*, *courier*; *vedétta*, *scout*; which are feminine.

*il* fratèllo, *the brother*.

*il* poèta, *the poet*.

*úna* spía, *a spy*.

*mía* sorèlla, *my sister*.

*la* poetéssa, *the poetess*.

*la* nôstra guía, *our guide*.

19. Of nouns denoting objects without sex some are masculine, some feminine. Their gender can often be determined by the final letter. All Italian nouns end in *-a*, *-e*, *-i*, *-o*, or *-u*.<sup>1</sup>

(a) Those ending in *-a* are feminine; except *colêra*, *cholera*; *qual-côsa*, *something*; Greek neuters in *-ma*,<sup>2</sup> many geographical names, and a few other words, mostly foreign.

*un'* óra, *an hour*.

*il* Canadà, *Canada*.

*un* telegrámma, *a telegram*.

*il* sofà, *the sofa*.

(b) Of those ending in *-e* and *-i* some are masculine, some feminine. All ending in *-zióne*, *-gióne*, or *-údi-ne* are feminine.

*il* fiúme, *the river*.

*un* dì, *a day*.

*la* ragióne, *the reason*.

*la* páce, *peace*.

*úna* metròpoli, *a metropolis*.

*la* servitúdi-ne, *service*.

(c) Those ending in *-o* are masculine; except *máno*, *hand*.

*il* ginôechio, *the knee*.

*la* máno, *the hand*.

(d) Those ending in *-u* are feminine; except *soprappiù*, *surplus*, and a few foreign words.

*la* virtù, *virtue*.

*il* bambù, *bamboo*.

20. Any other part of speech (except an adjective<sup>3</sup>) used as a noun must be masculine: as *il* viaggiàre, *traveling*.

21. Masculine names of trees in *-o* or *-e* have a feminine form in *-a* or *-e* respectively, denoting their fruit; but *il* dát-

<sup>1</sup> A few foreign nouns used in Italian end in a consonant: as *lápís*, *pencil* (*i* *lápís*, *the pencils*). Nouns in *-o* or *-e* often drop that vowel if the preceding consonant is *l*, *n*, or *r*: as *cáne* = *can*, *dog*.

<sup>2</sup> Mostly scientific terms.

<sup>3</sup> Adjectives of course have the gender of the nouns they represent. An adjective used as an abstract noun is masculine: *il* bello, *the beautiful* = *beauty*.



**tero**, *date*, **il fíco**, *fig*, **il limóne**, *lemon*, **il pómo**, *apple*, are always the same, whether denoting the tree or the fruit.

**un** *susíno*, *a plum tree*.

**úna** *susína*, *a plum*.

**il nóce**, *the walnut tree*.

**la nóce**, *the walnut*.

**quésti fíchi**, *these fig trees, these figs*.

## NUMBER

**22.** Feminines in unaccented **a** form their plural by changing **a** into **e**.

**la stráda**, *the street*.

**le stráde**, *the streets*.

**úna bugía**, *a lie*.

**le bugíe**, *lies*.

(a) Feminines in **-ca** and **-ga** form their plural in **-che** and **-ghe** respectively (the **h** being inserted merely to indicate that the **c** and **g** keep their hard sound).

**un' ôca**, *a goose*.

**mólte ôche**, *many geese*.

**la bottégia**, *the shop*.

**parécchie bottéghe**, *several shops*.

(b) Nouns in unaccented **-cia** and **-gia** form their plural in **-ce** and **-ge** respectively.<sup>1</sup>

**la guáncia**, *the cheek*.

**le guánce**, *the cheeks*.

**úna ciliégia**, *a cherry*.

**tánte ciliége**, *so many cherries*.

**23.** Masculines in unaccented **-a** and *all* nouns in unaccented **-o** and **-e** (not **-ie**) form their plural in **-i**.<sup>2</sup>

**un poêta**, *a poet*.

**dúe poêti**, *two poets*.

**lo zío**, *the uncle*.

**gli zii**, *the uncles*.

**la máno**, *the hand*.

**le mie máni**, *my hands*.

**un mése**, *a month*.

**tre mési**, *three months*.

**la corníce**, *the frame*.

**quáttro corníci**, *four frames*.

(a) Masculines in **-ca** and **-ga** form their plural in **-chi** and **-ghi** respectively.

**il monárca**, *the monarch*.

**i monárchi**, *the monarchs*.

**il collêga**, *the colleague*.

**i collêghi**, *the colleagues*.

<sup>1</sup> **Provincia** has *provincie*. In general borrowed words and words whose plural is necessarily very rare keep the **i**: **audácia**, *audacies*.

<sup>2</sup> In old Italian and in poetry words in **-ello** and **-ale** often form their plural in **-egli** or **-ei**, **-agli** or **-ai**: **capéllo**, *capégli*; **animále**, *animái*.

(b) Nouns in unaccented **-io** form their plural by changing **-io** to **-i** (often written **î**, **j**, or **ii**).

lo spêcchio, *the mirror.*

il ciliêgio, *the cherry tree.*

gli spêcchi, *the mirrors.*

î ciliêgi, *the cherry trees.*

(c) Nouns in **-go** form their plural in **-ghi**. Nouns in **-co** form their plural in **-chi** if the penult is accented, otherwise in **-ci**.

il castîgo, *the punishment.*

un catâlogo, *a catalogue.*

il fîco, *the fig.*

antîco, *ancient.*

un mêtico, *a doctor.*

î castîghi, *the punishments.*

dúe catâloghi, *two catalogues.*

cínque fîchi, *five figs.*

gli antîchi, *the ancients.*

sêi mêtici, *six doctors.*

This rule has a number of exceptions. In the following lists, words whose irregular plural is rare are omitted.

1. Compound nouns in **-logo** denoting persons engaged in the sciences, and all compound nouns in **-fago** form their plural in **-gi**.<sup>1</sup>

il fisiôlogo, *the physiologist.*

antropôfago, *cannibal.*

î fisiôlogi, *physiologists.*

antropôfagi, *cannibals.*

2. The following words form their plural in **-ci**, although the penult is accented:

amîco

grêco

inimîco

nemîco

pôrco<sup>2</sup>

**Grêco** has a regular plural in the expression **vîni grêchi**.

3. The following words form their plural in **-chi**, although the penult is unaccented:

âbbaco

fârmaco

lâstrico

rammârico

strâscico

acrôstico

indaco

mânico

rîsico

tôssico

cârico<sup>3</sup>

intônaco

pârroco

sciâtico

trâffico

dimêntico<sup>3</sup>

intrínseco

pízzico

stômaco

válico<sup>4</sup>

**Acrôstico** and **fârmaco** have also regular plurals.

<sup>1</sup> Likewise the rare or obsolete words: **flemmagôgo**, **idragôgo**, **metallûrgo**, **sârgo** (also reg. plur.), **sortîlego**. *Magicians* = **mâghi**; *Magi* = **mâgi**.

<sup>2</sup> Likewise the rare words: **aprico**, **lombrîco** (also reg.), **uvamîco**, **vîco**.

<sup>3</sup> Likewise its compounds.

<sup>4</sup> Likewise the rare or obsolete words: **filâccico**, **mântaco** (also reg.), **ostâtico**, **sfilâccico**, **stâtico** (noun), **úncico**.

(d) The following masculines in **-o** have an irregular plural in **-a** which is feminine:

**centináio**, *hundred*.  
**migliáio**, *thousand*.

**míglío**, *mile*.  
**páio**, *pair*.

**uôvo**, *egg*.

Many masculines in **-o** have this irregular feminine plural in **-a** besides the regular masculine plural in **-i**. The most common are:

**bráccio**, *arm*.  
**díto**, *finger*.  
**frútto**, *fruit*.  
**ginôcchio**, *knee*.

**grído**, *shout*.  
**lábbro**, *lip*.  
**légno**, *wood*.  
**mêmbro**, *member*.

**múro**, *wall*.  
**orécchio**, *ear*.  
**ôssó**, *bone*.

un páio, *a pair*.  
il míó bráccio, *my arm*.  
il lábbro, *the lip*.  
un ôssó, *a bone*.

sétte páia, *seven pairs*.  
le túe bráccia, *thy arms*.  
le lábbra or i lábbrí, *the lips*.  
le ôssa or gli ôssi, *the bones*.

**Bráccio**, **ginôcchio**, **lábbro**, and **orécchio** nearly always have the irregular plural when denoting the two *arms, knees, lips, or ears* belonging to the same body.

**24.** All monosyllables, and all nouns ending in **-i**, **-ie**, **-u**, an accented vowel, or a consonant, are invariable.

il re, *the king*.  
il bríndisi, *the toast*.  
úna spêcie, *a kind*.  
la virtù, *virtue*.  
úna città, *a city*.  
l' ômnibus, *the omnibus*.

i re, *the kings*.  
i bríndisi, *the toasts*.  
ôtto spêcie, *eight kinds*.  
le virtù, *the virtues*.  
diêci città, *ten cities*.  
gli ômnibus, *the omnibusses*.

**25.** The following nouns have irregular plurals:

**búe**, *ox*, pl. **buôí**.  
**dío**, *god*, pl. **dêí**.<sup>1</sup>

**móglie**, *wife*, pl. **mógli**.  
**uômo**, *man*, pl. **uômini**.

<sup>1</sup> The article used with **dêí** is **gli**: **gli dêí**.

## ADJECTIVES

**26.** Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender and number. An adjective modifying two nouns of different genders is generally put in the masculine plural.

Il gátto è pulíto.

*The cat is neat.*

Stánze pulíte.

*Neat rooms.*

Una cása e un giardíno bellíni.

*A pretty house and garden.*

La ragázza è bellína.

*The girl is pretty.*

**27.** Numeral and pronominal adjectives, **bêllo**, **brávo**, **buôno**, and the commonest adjectives of size and quantity, precede their nouns. Adjectives of nationality, shape, and material follow.

Adjectives whose use is prompted by emotion, and adjectives used in a figurative sense, generally precede.

Otherwise, of the noun and adjective, the one that contains the chief idea comes last.

Due cáni.

*Two dogs.*

Trôppo páne.

*Too much bread.*

La buôna mádre.

*The good mother.*

Le grándi città.

*Great cities.*

Un líbro francése.

*A French book.*

Quésta pálla rotónda.

*This round ball.*

Pôver' uômo!

*Poor man!*

Úna néra menzógna.

*A black falsehood.*

La vôstra gentilíssima lèttera.

*Your kind letter.*

È un uômo gentilíssimo.

*He is a kind man.*

## GENDER AND NUMBER

**28.** Adjectives ending in **-o** are masculine, and form their feminine in **-a**. Adjectives in **-e** are invariable in the singular.

buôno stivalétto, *good boot.*

ragázzo felice, *happy boy.*

buôna scárpa, *good shoe.*

ragázza felice, *happy girl.*

sèi buòni cassettóni, <i>six good</i> <i>bureaus.</i>	òtto buòne sêggiole, <i>eight good</i> <i>chairs.</i>
dúe uòmini felici, <i>two happy</i> <i>men.</i>	tre dónne felici, <i>three happy</i> <i>women.</i>

(c) When preceding a noun, **bêllo**, *beautiful*, has forms similar to those of the definite article; and **Sânto**, *Saint*, and **grânde**, *great*, have corresponding forms in the singular.<sup>1</sup> **Buôno**, *good*, when preceding its noun, has a singular similar to the indefinite article. The masculine of these words (which is the only irregular part) is, therefore, as follows:

Before a vowel: bell', Sant', grand', buon; pl. bēgli, Sánti, grándi, buóni.

Un **bêl** quádرو.  
Dúe **bêi** lètti.  
Un **bèllo** scaffále.  
Quáttro **bègli** stiváli.  
Un **bèll'** ándito.  
Mólti **bègli** orològi.  
Una **bèlla** stúfa.  
Paréecchie **bèlle** tènde.  
Il palázзо è **bèllo**.

*A fine picture.  
Two fine beds.  
A fine bookcase.  
Four fine boots.  
A fine hall.  
Many fine clocks.  
A fine stove.  
Several fine curtains.  
The palace is fine.*

<sup>1</sup> *Gran* is, moreover, often used in the fem. sing. (for *gránde*), and sometimes in the plur. (for *grándi*); it is regularly used before fem. sing. nouns in -e, and in the expression *úna gran bêlla* (or *brútta*) *côsa*. *Gránde*, on the other hand, is occasionally used for *gran*.

Le sêdie son b  lle.  
 San Pi  tro, S  nto St  fano e  
 Sant' Ant  nio.  
 Un gran fu  co.  
 Gr  ndi cam  ni.  
 Il gr  nde scald  no.  
 Di  ci gr  ndi sp  lli.  
 Un gr  nde sci  me.  
 Il gr  nde z  polo.  
 Un grand' arm  dio.  
 V  nti gr  ndi   lberi.  
   na gr  nde c  mera.  
 Cinque gr  ndi fin  stre.  
 Il sal  tto    m  lto gr  nde.  
 Un bu  n l  me.  
 Bu  ni fiamm  feri.  
 Il bu  no sgab  llo.  
 N  ve bu  ni scol  ri.  
 Il bu  n   lio.  
 Par  ecchi bu  ni   ghi.  
   na bu  na cuc  na.  
 Le bu  ne cand  le.  
 Il bamb  no    bu  no.

*The chairs are beautiful.*  
*St. Peter, St. Stephen, and St. Anthony.*  
*A big fire.*  
*Big fireplaces.*  
*The big foot-warmer.*  
*Ten big pins.*  
*A great swarm.*  
*The large bung.*  
*A big wardrobe.*  
*Twenty big trees.*  
*A large bedroom.*  
*Five big windows.*  
*The parlor is very large.*  
*A good lamp.*  
*Good matches.*  
*The good stool.*  
*Nine good pupils.*  
*The good oil.*  
*Several good needles.*  
*A good kitchen.*  
*The good candles.*  
*The child is good.*

30. Any adjective of either gender or either number may be used as a noun.

I bu  ni, *the good.*

la b  lla, *the beautiful woman.*

### COMPARISON

31. All Italian adjectives form their comparative by prefixing *pi  *, *more*, and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative.

b  llo, *beautiful*; *pi   b  llo*, *more beautiful*; *il pi   b  llo*, *the most beautiful*.

l  ngo, *long*; *pi   l  ngo*, *longer*; *il pi   l  ngo*, *the longest*.

When the superlative immediately follows the noun, this article is omitted.

La v  a *pi   c  rta*.

*The shortest way.*

(a) The following adjectives have an irregular comparison in addition to the regular one:

álto, *high*; **più álto** or **superióre**; **il più álto** or **il superióre**.  
 báссо, *low*; **più báссо** or **inferióre**; **il più báссо** or **l' inferióre**.  
 buòno, *good*; **più buòno** or **miglióre**<sup>1</sup>; **il più buòno** or **il miglióre**.  
 cattívo, *bad*; **più cattívo** or **peggióre**<sup>1</sup>; **il più cattívo** or **il peggióre**.  
 gránde, *big*; **più gránde** or **maggióre**; **il più gránde** or **il maggióre**.  
 píccolo, *small*; **più píccolo** or **minóre**; **il più píccolo** or **il minóre**.

*Higher and lower* are commonly rendered by **più álto** and **più báссо**; **superióre** and **inferióre** generally mean *superior* and *inferior*. **Miglióre** and **peggióre** are more used than **più buòno** and **più cattívo**, which have the same sense. *Larger and smaller* are generally **più gránde** and **più píccolo**; **maggióre** and **minóre** usually signify *older* and *younger*.

Noi siámo **miglióri** di lóro.

*We are better than they.*

Quésta sála da pránzo è la  
**più gránde**.

*This dining room is the biggest.*

Piètro è il fratèllo **minóre**.

*Peter is the youngest brother.*

**32.** The adverb *less* is expressed by **méno**, *least* by **il méno**. As . . . as, so . . . as are **tánto . . . quánto**, **tánto . . . cóme**, **così . . . cóme**, or simply **quánto**.

Quélla stánza è la **méno**  
 bellína. *That room is the least pretty.*

Páolo non è **tánto** buòno **cóme**  
 Robérto. *Paul isn't so good as Robert.*

Giovánni è álto **quánto** Filíppo. *John is as tall as Philip.*

**33.** *Than* is **che**.

L' albérgo è **più gránde** **che**  
 bello.

*The hotel is bigger than it is beautiful.*

But before a noun, a pronoun, or a numeral *than* is rendered by the preposition **di** (see 12).

Riccárdo è **peggióre** **di** me.

*Richard is worse than I.*

Vói siéte **più ricchi** **del** re.

*You are richer than the king.*

**Méno** **di** cínque.

*Less than five.*

<sup>1</sup> The adverbs *better* and *worse* are **méglio** and **pèggio**.

If, however, this *than* is preceded by a word meaning *rather*, it is translated **che**.

Piuttôsto la môrte **che** il disonóre. *Rather death than dishonor.*

Before an inflected verb *than* is **che non** or **di quel che**. If the verb has a negative subject, *than* is **che**.

Abbáia più **che non** môrde. *He barks more than he bites.*  
 Prométto méno **di quel che** do. *I promise less than I give.*  
 Più liêto **che** nessún fíglío lo êra státó. *Happier than any son had been.*

34. *The more . . . the more, the less . . . the less*, are **più . . . più, méno . . . méno**. *More and less* after a number are **di più, di méno**. In speaking of time, *longer* after a negative is **più**.

Più stúdio, più impáro. *The more I study, the more I learn.*  
 Trénta giòrni **di méno**. *Thirty days less.*  
 Non lo vediámo **più**. *We see him no longer.*

## AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES; NUMERALS

### AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ENDINGS

35. Instead of a word expressing size or quality, the Italians often use a suffix. This suffix may be added to a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. When added to an adjective, and generally when added to a noun, it takes the gender of the word to which it is affixed: occasionally, however, a suffix with masculine termination is added to a feminine noun, which thereby becomes masculine. A word loses its final vowel before a suffix; but the preceding consonant, if it be *c* or *g*, must keep its former quality: as *Cárló*+*íno*=*Carlíno* *vóce*+*óne*=*vocióne*, *pôco*+*íno*=*pochíno*, *adágio*+*íno*=*adagíno*.



(a) The commonest ending is **-íssimo** (fem. **-íssima**), *very*, which in general is added only to adjectives and adverbs. Adverbs in **-mente** add the **-íssima** before the **-mente** (see 85). Any adjective may take it, and it is very often used in cases where it would be entirely superfluous in English.

*largo, wide.*

*bêne, well.*

*gránde, big.*

*fa un têmpo bellissimo, it's  
beautiful weather.*

*larghíssimo, very wide.*

*beníssimo, very well.*

*grandíssimo, very big.*

*bellissimamente, very beautifully.*

(b) The principal suffix denoting bigness is **-ône**; it is always masculine, but has a rare feminine form, **-ôna**.

*libro, book.*

*cása, house.*

*bôccia, decanter.*

*un librône, a big book.*

*un casône, a large house.*

*úna boccióna, a big decanter.*

(c) The most important suffixes denoting smallness are **-íno**, **-cino**, **-icino**, **-iccino**, **-étto**, **-êllo**, **-cêllo**, **-rcêllo**, **-arêllo**, **-erêllo**, **-ôtto**, **-úccio**, **-úzzo**, **-uôlo**, with their fem. **-ína**, etc. These endings, especially **-úccio**, are often used to express affection; some of them may be used to express pity or contempt. **Ôtto** sometimes means *somewhat large* instead of *small*.

*sorêlla, sister.*

*bêllo, beautiful.*

*brútto, ugly.*

*piázza, square.*

*Giôrgio, George.*

*campána, bell.*

*áquila, eagle.*

*cása, house.*

*Giovánni, John.*

*pázzo, mad.*

*póvero, poor.*

*sorellína, little sister.*

*bellíno, pretty.*

*bruttíno, rather ugly.*

*piazzétta, little square.*

*Giorgétto, Georgie.*

*campanêllo, little bell.*

*aquilôtto, eaglet.*

*casôtta, rather large house.*

*Giovannúccio, dear little Johnny.*

*pazzarêlla, poor mad woman.*

*poveríni, poor things!*

(d) The ending **-áccio** denotes worthlessness.

*rôba, stuff, goods.*

*têmpo, weather.*

*Alfrédo, Alfred.*

*robáccia, trash.*

*tempáccio, nasty weather.*

*Alfredáccio, naughty Alfred.*

36. Of the endings added to nouns **-íno** is by far the most common; the only ones that are freely used to form new compounds are **-íno**, *little*, **-óne**, *great*, **-úccio**, *dear*, and **-áccio**, *bad*. In very many cases, endings lose their character of independent suffixes, and become inseparable parts of certain words, whose meanings they often change: as **scála**, *stairway*; **scalíno**, *stair*; **scalétto**, *ladder*. So *brother*, *sister* are always **fratèllo**, **sorèlla**. Some suffixes (as **-uòlo**) are rarely used except in this way. Others (as **-cino**, **-icino**, **-èllo**, **-cèllo**, **-icèllo**, **-arèllo**, **-erèllo**) cannot be attached to any word at pleasure, their use being determined by precedent or euphony.

37. Sometimes several suffixes are added at once to the same word: as **ládno**, *thief*; **ladróne**, *terrible thief*; **ladroncèllo**, *terrible little thief*.

## NUMERALS

38. The cardinal numerals are:

1, úno.	15, quíndici.	28, ventôtto or vent' ôtto.	101, centúno or cent' úno.
2, dúe.	16, sédici.	29, ventinôve.	105, centocínque.
3, tre.	17, diciassette.	30, trénta.	115, centoquíndici.
4, quáttro.	18, diciôtto.	31, trentúno or trent' úno.	125, cento venti- cínque.
5, cínque.	19, diciannôve.	32, trentadúe.	200, dugênto or duécênto.
6, sèi.	20, vénti.	40, quaránta.	250, dugênto cin- quánta.
7, sètte.	21, ventúno or vent' úno.	50, cinquánta.	300, trecênto.
8, ôtto.	22, ventidúe.	60, sessánta.	400, quattrocênto.
9, nôve.	23, ventitrè.	70, settánta.	1000, mílle.
10, dièci.	24, ventiquáttro.	80, ottánta.	2000, dúe míla.
11, úndici.	25, venticínque.	90, novánta.	
12, dódici.	26, ventisèi.	100, cênto.	
13, trédici.	27, ventisètte.		
14, quattórdici.			

**Úno** has a feminine **úna**; when used *adjectively* it has the same forms as the indefinite article; so also **ventúno**, etc.

The plural of **mílle** is **míla**. *A million* is **un milióne** or **milióne**, of which the plural is **milióni** or **millióni**.

1. No conjunction is used between the different parts of a number: as **dugêto quarâta**, *two hundred and forty*. No indefinite article is used before **cêto** and **mílle**: as **cêto líbri**, *a hundred books*.

2. **Cêto**, **dugêto**, etc., when followed by another numeral of more than two syllables may lose the final syllable **-to**: as **seicêto cinquâta** or **seicencinquâta**, *six hundred and fifty*.

3. *Eleven hundred, twelve hundred, etc.*, must be rendered **mille-cêto**, **mílle dugêto**, etc.: as **mílle ottocêto ottantasêtte**, 1887.

4. *Both, all three, etc.*, are **tútti** (fem. **tútte**) e **dúe**, **tútti** (fem. **tútte**) e **tre**, etc.

(a) If the noun modified by **ventúno**, **trentúno**, etc., follows this numeral, it is regularly in the singular; as **trentún giòrno**, *thirty-one days*. Sometimes, however, the noun precedes the numeral, and then it is in the plural.

**Sessantúna líra**, or **líre sessantúna**. *Sixty-one francs*.

(b) In dates the definite article is prefixed to the number representing the year, if that number does not follow the name of a month. For instance, 1915 is **il 1915**.

**Nel mílle ottocêto ottantasêtte**. *In 1887*.

(c) *What time is it?* is **che óra è?** or **che óre sóno?** *It is six, etc.*, is **sóno le sêi**, etc., **óre** being understood. *One o'clock* is **il tócco**.

**Sóno le dúe e mêzzo**. *It's half past two*.

**Sóno le tre e diêci**. *It's ten minutes past three*.

**Ci máncano vénti minúti álle quáttro**. *It's twenty minutes to four*.

**Sóno le cinque méno un quártro**. *It's a quarter to five*.

## 39. The ordinal numerals are:

1st, <i>primo</i> .	12th, <i>duodécimo</i> or	20th, <i>ventésimo</i> .
2d, <i>secôndo</i> .	<i>décimo secôndo</i> .	21st, <i>ventésimo primo</i> or
3d, <i>têrzo</i> .	13th, <i>tredicésimo</i> or	<i>ventunésimo</i> .
4th, <i>quárto</i> .	<i>décimo têrzo</i> .	22d, <i>ventésimo secôndo</i>
5th, <i>quinto</i> .	14th, <i>quattordicésimo</i> or	or <i>ventiduésimo</i> .
6th, <i>sêsto</i> .	<i>décimo quártto</i> .	30th, <i>trentésimo</i> .
7th, <i>sêttimo</i> .	15th, <i>quindicésimo</i> or	100th, <i>centésimo</i> .
8th, <i>ottávo</i> .	<i>décimo quinto</i> .	101st, <i>centésimo primo</i> .
9th, <i>nôno</i> .	16th, <i>décimo sêsto</i> .	115th, <i>centoquindicésimo</i> .
10th, <i>décimo</i> .	17th, <i>décimo sêttimo</i> .	200th, <i>dugentésimo</i> .
11th, <i>undécimo</i> or	18th, <i>décimo ottávo</i> .	1000th, <i>millésimo</i> .
<i>décimo primo</i> .	19th, <i>décimo nôno</i> .	2000th, <i>duemilésimo</i> .

All of them form their feminines and plurals like other adjectives in -o.

*Le settantésime quinte cose.      The 75th things.*

(a) Ordinal numerals are used after the words *book*, *chapter*, and the names of rulers; but no article intervenes.

<i>Cárlo secôndo</i> .	<i>Charles the Second.</i>
<i>Pío nôno</i> .	<i>Pius IX.</i>
<i>Libro têrzo</i> .	<i>Book the Third.</i>
<i>Capítulo quártto</i> .	<i>Chapter four.</i>

(b) For the day of the month, except the first, a cardinal number is used.

<i>Il dì cinque d' apríle</i> or <i>il</i>	<i>The fifth of April.</i>
<i>cínque apríle</i> .	
<i>Il primo di mággio</i> .	<i>The first of May.</i>

(c) *The fourteenth century* is *il sêcolo décimo quártto* or *il Tre-cênto* (i. e. *mille trecênto*). *Il Dugênto*, *il Quattrocênto*, *il Cin-quecênto* are often used for the 13th, 15th, and 16th centuries, and the later century names may be similarly abbreviated.

(d) *A third*, *a fourth*, *a fifth*, etc., are *un têrzo*, *un quártto*, *un quinto*, etc. *Half* is *la metâ*; the adjective *half* is *mêzzo*.

**40.** *A couple or a pair is un páio. A dozen is úna doz-zína. The expressions úna decína, úna ventína, úna tren-tína, etc., un centináio, un migliáio, mean about ten, about twenty, etc. (see 23, d). Once, twice, etc., are úna vólta, dúe vólte, etc.*

Ún páio di scárpe.

*A pair of shoes.*

Úna cinquantína di persóne.

*Some fifty persons.*

L' ho vísto parécchie vólte.

*I've seen it several times.*

## DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

**41.** For the indefinite pronouns, see 86–91.

**42. 1.** The demonstratives used adjectively are **quésto**,<sup>1</sup> *this*, and **quéllo** or **cotéstó**, *that*. **Cotéstó** (also **codéstó**) is used of objects associated with the person addressed. **Quésto** and **cotéstó** are inflected like other adjectives; but they generally drop **o** before a vowel. **Quéllo** is inflected like **béllo** (see 29, c).

quést' uómo, *this man.*

quéste ragázze, *these girls.*

quél bambíno, *that infant.*

quéi fanciúlli, *those children.*

quéll' amíco, *that friend.*

quégli spòsi, *that couple.*

quéllo zío, *that uncle.*

quélle signóre, *those ladies.*

**Quésto** and **quéllo** are also used substantively for *this, that, this one, that one*: as **fáte quésto, non fáte quéllo**, *do this, don't do that*.

**2.** *This man* is translated by **quésti**; *that man* by **quégli**, **quéi**, or **cotésti** (rare); these words are invariable, refer only to persons, and are used only in the nominative singular. **Costúi** and **colúi** mean respectively the same as **quésti** and

<sup>1</sup> In archaic or literary Italian **éssó** is sometimes used for **quésto**.

quégli, but are not defective, having a feminine singular *costêi, colêi*, and a plural (both genders alike) *costôro, colôro*. *Costúi* is often used in a depreciative sense.

Quésti è francése e quegli è tedesco.	<i>This man is French and that one is German.</i>
Chi è costúi?	<i>Who is this fellow?</i>
Párlo di colúi.	<i>I speak of that man.</i>

3. *Ciò, this, that*, is invariable, and represents a whole idea, not a single word:

<i>Ciò è véro.</i>	<i>That's so.</i>
--------------------	-------------------

(a) *Quéllo* and *quésto*, *quégli* and *quésti* mean also *the former, the latter*.

(b) *He who is colúi che*, or simply *chi*. *The one who, whom, which, that which, what*, is *quéllo che* or *quél che*.

<i>Chi lavóra or colúi che lavóra.</i>	<i>He who works.</i>
<i>Quél che díco ío.</i>	<i>The one I mean.</i>
<i>A quél che sênto.</i>	<i>From what I hear.</i>

43. The interrogative *who, whom*, is *chi*. *What?* used substantively is *che, che còsa, or còsa*.<sup>1</sup> *What?* used adjectively is *che* or *quále*. *Which?* is *quále*.

*Quále* has a plural *quáli*; *chi* and *che* are invariable.

*How much?* is *quánto* (-a); *how many?* is *quánti* (-e).

<i>Chi védo?</i>	<i>Whom do I see?</i>
<i>Di chi parláte?</i>	<i>Of whom do you speak?</i>
<i>Dítemi chi viðene.</i>	<i>Tell me who is coming.</i>
<i>Che vògliono?</i>	<i>What do they want?</i>
<i>Che còsa díce?</i>	<i>What does he say?</i>
<i>Che or quáli líbri avéte com- práto?</i>	<i>What books did you buy?</i>
<i>Quále di quésti volúmi è il prímo?</i>	<i>Which of these volumes is the first?</i>
<i>Quánte vòlte te l'ho détto!</i>	<i>How many times I have told you!</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Còsa* (as *còsa díce?*) is generally avoided in written Italian. Note that *chi* is used in *indirect* as well as in *direct* questions.

(a) The interrogative *whose* is **di chi**.

**Di chi** è quèsto bigliétto?      *Whose card is this?*

(b) In exclamations *what a*, *what* are rendered by **che** or **quále** without any article.

**Che** bël paése!      *What a beautiful country!*

**44.** The principal relative pronouns are **che**, **cúi**, **il quále**: they are all applied to both persons and things, and mean *who*, *whom*, *which*, or *that*. **Il quále** is inflected (*la quále*, **il quáli**, **le quáli**). **Che** and **cúi** are invariable: in general **che** is used only as subject and direct object, **cúi** only after prepositions or as indirect object. In poetry **ónde** is often used to signify *of which* or *from which*.

La lingua <b>che</b> si párla.	<i>The language which we speak.</i>
L' uòmo <b>del quále</b> si tráttà.	<i>The man of whom we are speaking.</i>
Le persóne <b>a cúi</b> or <b>álle quáli</b> párla.	<i>The persons to whom I speak.</i>
Lo scrítto <b>di cúi</b> párla.	<i>The work I am speaking of.</i>

1. As subject or direct object **che** is preferred to **il quále**, unless clearness requires the latter.

<b>Le figlie che</b> stúdíano.	<i>The daughters who are studying.</i>
<b>Le figlie dégli Americáni, le quáli</b> stúdíano.	<i>The Americans' daughters, who are studying.</i>

2. The relative *whose* is **il cúi** or **del quále**.

Úna signóra, <b>il cúi</b> nóme è <b>Lucía</b> .	<i>A lady whose name is Lucy.</i>
Un uòmo, <b>le cúi</b> figlie conó-sco.	<i>A man whose daughters I know.</i>
L' autóre, <b>del cúi</b> líbro si párla.	<i>The author whose book we are speaking of.</i>
Le chiése <b>délle quáli</b> si védono le cúpole.	<i>The churches whose domes we see.</i>

3. The relative cannot be omitted in Italian.

Le case <b>che</b> ho compráte.	<i>The houses I have bought.</i>
---------------------------------	----------------------------------

(a) *Such . . . as* is **tále . . . quále**; in poetry **tále, quále** have a plural **tái, quái** instead of **táli, quáli**. *As much as* is **tánto quánto**; *as many as* is **tánti quánti**.

**Quále** è il pádre **tále** è il figlio. *As is the father, so is the son.*

(b) *He who, him who* is **chi** or **colúi che** (see 42, b).

**Chi** ha la sanità è ricco. *He who has health is rich.*

**Colúi che** lavóra è contênto. *He who works is satisfied.*

Amiámo **chi** ci áma. *We love him who loves us.*

(c) *Whoever* is **chiúnque**; *whatever* as a pronoun is **tútto quel che** or **checchè**, as an adjective **quále che, qualúnque che, qualúnque, per quánto**. These words, excepting **tútto quel che**, all take the subjunctive. **Checchè** is now but little used.

**Chiúnque** siáte. *Whoever you may be.*

**Checchè** faciáte, fátelo bêne. *Whatever you do, do it well.*

**Tútto quel che** voléte. *Whatever you wish.*

**Quáli che** siano i vòstri motívi. *Whatever your motives may be.*

**Qualúnque** siano i suòi talènti. *Whatever his talents may be.*

In **qualúnque** státo **che** ío mi trôvi. *In whatever condition I may find myself.*

**Per quánte** ricchêzze égli ábbia. *Whatever riches he may have.*

#### 45. The possessive pronouns and adjectives are:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
<i>my, mine:</i>	il mío	la mía	i miêi	le mie
<i>thy, thine:</i>	il túo	la túa	i tuôi	le tue
<i>his, her, hers, its:</i>	il súo	la súa	i suòi	le sue
<i>our, ours:</i>	il nôstro	la nôstra	i nôstri	le nôstre
<i>your, yours:</i>	íi vòstro	la vòstra	i vòstri	le vòstre
<i>their, theirs:</i>	il lóro	la lóro	i lóro	le lóro

**Lóro** is invariable; the others agree with the object possessed:

il mío násó, *my nose.*

i vòstri ôcchi, *your eyes.*

la súa bócca, *his, her mouth.*

le lóro lábbra, *their lips.*

When the possessive stands alone in the predicate, the article is omitted if the possessive is used adjectively. To



determine whether the possessive is used adjectively, consider the sentence as the answer to a question. If the sentence answers a question beginning with *whose*, there is no article; if it answers a question beginning with *which*, the article is used.

Quêsto cappêllo è mío.	<i>This hat is mine. Whose hat?</i>
	<i>Mine.</i>
Quêsto cappêllo è il mío.	<i>This hat is mine. Which hat?</i>
	<i>This one.</i>

(a) The article (unless it might be used in English) is omitted before the possessive:

1. When a numeral, an adjective of quantity, or a demonstrative or interrogative adjective precedes it:

Dúe cáni suôi.	<i>Two dogs of his.</i>
BUT I dúe cáni suôi.	<i>The two dogs of his or his two dogs.</i>
Mólti miêi amíci.	<i>Many friends of mine.</i>
BUT I mólti miêi amíci.	<i>The many friends of mine or my many friends.</i>
Quêsto túo difêtto.	<i>This fault of thine.</i>

2. When the possessive forms part of a title:

Vôstra Maestà.	<i>Your Majesty.</i>
Súa Altézza.	<i>His Highness.</i>

3. When the possessive modifies a noun used in the vocative (in this case the possessive generally follows its noun): as **amíco mío**, *my friend!*

4. The article is generally omitted also when the possessive precedes a noun in the *singular* expressing relationship: as **nôstra mãdre**, *our mother*; compare **le mie figlie**, *my daughters*. But if the noun has a diminutive ending, or another adjective accompanies the noun, the article is not omitted:

Il túo fratellíno.	<i>Thy little brother.</i>
La vôstra gentilíssima sorêlla.	<i>Your kind sister.</i>

Sometimes it is omitted before a *predicate* noun that does not express relationship:

Quêsto signóre è súo maêstro. *This gentleman is his teacher.*  
 Ío lo credéva mío amíco. *I thought him my friend.*

5. The article is omitted also in certain standing phrases, such as:

*da pártē mía, for me.*                      *a môdo súo, in his own way.*  
*per amór mío, for my sake.*              *è cólpa vôstra, it's your fault.*  
*in cása nôstra, in our house.*           *a cása súa, to his house.*

(b) The possessive, when not necessary for clearness, is usually replaced by a definite article.

Cóme sta **la** mámma? *How is your mother?*  
 Ha perdúto **il** giudízio. *He has lost his senses.*  
 Bátorono **i** piédi. *They stamp their feet.*

(c) When the name of the thing possessed is direct object of a verb, the Italians often use instead of the possessive a conjunctive personal pronoun (see 47) and a definite article.

**Si** stráppa **i** capélli. *He tears his hair (lit., he tears to himself the hairs).*  
**Mi** táglío **il** díto. *I cut my finger (I cut to myself the finger).*  
**Il** cáne **gli** agguantò **la** gámbe. *The dog seized his leg (seized to him the leg).*

If the thing possessed be a part of the body or clothing, this construction is frequent, even when the name of the thing is not object of a verb.

**Mi** duóle **il** cápo. *My head aches (to me aches the head).*

(d) When the possessor is not the subject of the sentence, *his, her* are, for the sake of clearness, often rendered **di lúi, di lèi**:

Égli non conósce **il di lèi** cuóre. *He does not know her heart.*

(e) *A . . . of mine, of thine, etc.,* is **un mío, un túo**, etc.:

**Úna** nôstra cugína. *A cousin of ours.*

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

**46.** Personal pronouns are divided into two classes, conjunctive and disjunctive: the conjunctive forms are those used as direct object of a verb, and as indirect object without a preposition; the disjunctive forms are those used as subject of a verb, and as object of a preposition.

ÉGLI ve lo dà per ME.  
He to you it gives for me.

## CONJUNCTIVE FORMS

**47.** Conjunctive pronouns are *always unaccented*, and cannot be separated from the verb, which they sometimes follow but oftener precede, as will be explained in **48**.

They are used only as direct object of a verb or as indirect object without a preposition. The forms are:

<b>mi</b> , <i>me, to me.</i>	<b>ti</b> , <i>thee, to thee.</i>
<b>ci</b> , <i>us, to us.</i> <sup>1</sup>	<b>vi</b> , <i>you, to you.</i>
<b>si</b> (reflexive), <i>himself, to himself; herself, to herself; itself, to itself.</i>	
<b>si</b> (reflexive), <i>themselves, to themselves.</i>	
<b>lo</b> , <i>him</i> <sup>1</sup> ; <b>gli</b> , <i>to him</i> . <sup>2</sup>	<b>la</b> , <i>her</i> ; <b>le</b> , <i>to her.</i>
<b>li</b> , <i>them</i> (masc.); <b>lóro</b> , <i>to them</i> . <sup>2</sup>	<b>le</b> , <i>them</i> (fem.); <b>lóro</b> , <i>to them.</i>

*It* must be rendered by a masculine or feminine form, according to the gender of the noun it represents. *It* representing not a word, but a whole clause, is **lo**.<sup>3</sup>

<b>Mi</b> conósce.	<i>He knows me.</i>
<b>Ti</b> do i líbri.	<i>I give thee the books.</i>
<b>Ci</b> vedéte.	<i>You see us.</i>
<b>Vi</b> díco tútto.	<i>I tell you everything.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In old Italian and in poetry **ne** is often used for **ci**, and **il** for **lo**.

<sup>2</sup> In conversation **li** is often used for **gli**, and **gli** or **li** for **lóro**.

<sup>3</sup> In certain idiomatic phrases **la** represents an indefinite object: as **pagárla cára**, *to pay dearly for it*.

Si vêste.	<i>He dresses himself.</i>
Si divêrtono.	<i>They amuse themselves.</i>
Êcco l' ôro: ve lo do.	<i>Here's the gold: I give it to you.</i>
Êcco la pálla: la védo.	<i>Here's the ball: I see it.</i>
Cóme potéva sapére se fo veníva o no? — Lo ha indo- vináto.	<i>How could he tell whether I was coming or not? He guessed it.</i>

1. It will be seen that the third person (not reflexive) has different forms for the direct and the indirect object.

Lo trovái.	<i>I found him.</i>
Gli féci un regalo.	<i>I made him a present.</i>
La láscia.	<i>He leaves her.</i>
Le scríve.	<i>He writes to her.</i>
Li cercáte.	<i>You seek them (masc.).</i>
Le salutáte.	<i>You greet them (fem.).</i>
Mandiámo lóro mílle salúti.	<i>We send them (masc. or fem.) a thousand greetings.</i>

2. The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are **mi**, **ci**; **ti**, **vi**. All plural reflexive pronouns are used also as reciprocal pronouns. A verb is called *reflexive* when it has as *direct* or *indirect* object a *conjunctive* pronoun representing the same person as its subject.

Mi defêndo.	<i>I defend myself.</i>
Vi laváte.	<i>You wash yourselves.</i>
Si fa onóre.	<i>She does herself credit.</i>
Si ôdiano.	<i>They hate each other.</i>
Ci amiámo.	<i>We love one another.</i>

3. Another conjunctive pronoun is **ne**,<sup>1</sup> of *it*, of *them*; it corresponds also to *any*, *some* when these words mean *any*, *some of it*, *any*, *some of them*. It is often used pleonastically in Italian.

Ne párla.	<i>He speaks of it.</i>
Ne ho.	<i>I have some.</i>
Non ne abbíamo.	<i>We haven't any.</i>
Ne voléte?	<i>Do you want any?</i>
Tu ne approfitti di quésta libertà.	<i>You make good use of this liberty.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. French **en**.

(a) **Vi**, *you*, and **ci** and **ne**, *us*, are not distinguished by form nor position from the adverbs **vi**, **ci**, meaning *there, here, to it, to them*,<sup>1</sup> and the adverb **ne**, *thence* (see 84):<sup>2</sup>

<b>Ci</b> vado.	<i>I go there.</i>
<b>Vi</b> è státo.	<i>He has been there.</i>
<b>Ne</b> vêngono.	<i>They come from there.</i>

The adverb **ci** or **vi** is used to express *to it, to them*, in speaking of *things*.

<b>Ci</b> pênserò.	<i>I shall attend to it.</i>
<b>Mi</b> fa déi gêsti, ma non <b>vi</b> rispóndo.	<i>He makes signs to me, but I do not reply to them.</i>

48. The conjunctive pronouns, except **lôro**, immediately precede the verb:

<b>Mi</b> vedéte.	<i>You see me.</i>
Non <b>lo</b> capísco.	<i>I don't understand him.</i>

But when the verb is an infinitive,<sup>3</sup> a positive imperative,<sup>4</sup> a present participle, or a past participle used without an auxiliary, the pronoun follows the verb, and is written as one word with it:<sup>5</sup>

per vedérlo, <i>to see him.</i>	di avérlo vedúto, <i>to have seen him.</i>
vedételi, <i>see them.</i>	vedêndoci, <i>seeing us.</i>
avêndoci vedúto, <i>having seen us.</i>	vedútoti, <i>having seen thee.</i>

The addition of the pronoun does not change the place of the accent.

**Lôro** always follows the verb, but is never united to it.

Égli dà <b>lôro</b> del víno.	<i>He gives them some wine.</i>
Parláte <b>lôro</b> .	<i>Speak to them.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. French *y*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. French *en*.

<sup>3</sup> Not the infinitive used — with a negative — as imperative (see 72): as **non lo fáre**, *do not do it* (second pers. sing.).

<sup>4</sup> Not the negative imperative, nor the subjunctive used imperatively (see 77, a): as **non li guardáte**, *do not look at them*; **si rêgoli**, *let him moderate himself* (third pers. sing. pres. subj.).

<sup>5</sup> Students should follow strictly all of these rules; but they will find that the first is, in certain cases, not always observed by good Italian writers. In literary style a pronoun often follows a verb that begins a sentence: as **védolo veníre**, *I see him coming*.

(a) When an infinitive depends immediately (without an intervening preposition) on another verb, a conjunctive pronoun belonging to the infinitive may go with either verb:

Pôso vedérti or ti pôso    *I can see thee.*  
vedére.

(NEVER: pôso ti vedére)

A reflexive pronoun oftenest goes with the main verb.

Si dêve corrêggere.                    *He must correct himself.*

If both verbs have objects, the main verb regularly takes all conjunctive pronouns:

Ve lo sênto dîre.                    *I hear you say it.*  
Me lo fa capîre.                    *He makes me understand it.*

If, however, the main verb is impersonal, it cannot take the object of the infinitive:

Bisógna fârlô.                    *It is necessary to do it.*

If the main verb is **fâre**, **lasciâre**, **sentîre**, **udîre**, or **vedére**, it must take the pronoun:

Lo fa chiamâre.                    *He has him called.*

(b) If the main verb is **fâre**, and the dependent infinitive has a direct object, the object of **fâre**, if it has one, must be indirect:

Le fa avêre la lêttera.            *He lets her have the letter.*  
Fâteli vedére a quel signóre.    *Let that gentleman see them.*  
Dovrêi fârglielo accettâre.      *I ought to make him accept it.*

This construction is generally used also with **lasciâre**, *to let*, and often with **sentîre** and **udîre**, *to hear*, and **vedére**, *to see*. Note that the main verb takes all conjunctive pronouns.

Gliêlo védo dâre.                    *I see it given him.*

(c) When a conjunctive pronoun is joined to an infinitive, that infinitive drops its final **e**; if it ends in **-rre**, it drops **-re**:

fârlô (fâre), *to do it*.                    **condúrvi** (condúrre), *to conduct you*.

(d) The final vowel of **mi**, **ti**, **si** is often, and that of **lo**, **la** is nearly always elided before a verb beginning with a vowel:

<b>T'</b> ámo.	<i>I love thee.</i>
<b>L'</b> ho visto.	<i>I've seen him.</i>

(e) All conjunctive pronouns except **gli** and **glie** (see 50) double their initial consonant when added to any form of a verb that ends in an accented vowel:

<b>Dám</b> mi ( <i>imper. da' from dáre</i> ).	<i>Give me.</i>
<b>Parleró</b> lle ( <i>antique, for le parlerò</i> ).	<i>I shall speak to her.</i>
<b>Dí</b> llo ( <i>imper. dí' from díre</i> ).	<i>Say it.</i>

(f) Pronouns are joined to the interjection **êcco**, *see here*, just as they are joined to the imperative of a verb:

<b>Êccomi</b> .	<i>Here I am.</i>
<b>Êccotelo</b> pronto.	<i>Here it is ready for thee.</i>

**49.** When two conjunctive pronouns come together, the indirect object precedes the direct:

<b>Mi</b> vi presênta.	<i>He introduces you to me.</i>
<b>Non</b> vuôl presentárv <b>imi</b> .	<i>He will not introduce me to you.</i>
<b>Gli</b> si presentò un uômo.	<i>A man presented himself to him.</i>

But see 55, end.

**Lóro**, however, always comes last:

<b>Presentátela</b> lóro.	<i>Introduce her to them.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------

**Ne** follows all forms except **lóro**:

<b>Me</b> ne dà.	<i>He gives me some.</i>
<b>Dátene</b> lóro.	<i>Give them some.</i>

**50.** **Mi**, **ti**, **ci**, **vi**, **si** change their **i** to **e** before **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le**, **ne** (pronoun or adverb); and if the two words follow the verb, they are joined together:<sup>1</sup>

<b>Me</b> lo díce.	<i>He tells me it.</i>
<b>Ve</b> ne domándo.	<i>I ask you for some.</i>
<b>Mandáte</b> celo.	<i>Send it to us.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In poetry **me lo**, **me ne**, etc., often become **mel**, **men**, etc.: as **tel díco**, *I tell thee so*; **sen tórna**, *he returns thence*. **Non lo** often = **nol**.

Gli and le (*to her*) become **glie** before **lo, la, li, le, ne**, and unite with them:

Gliéli mándo.  
Vòglio dárglielo.

*I send them to him, to her.*  
*I wish to give it to him, to her.*

## DISJUNCTIVE FORMS

**51.** These forms are so called because they do not necessarily stand next to the verb.

Disjunctive pronouns have two cases, nominative and objective (or accusative). The objective case is used only after prepositions (for exceptions, see **51, a, b**).

The disjunctive forms are these:

ío, <i>I; me, me.</i>	tu, <i>thou; te, thee.</i>
nói, <i>we; nói, us.</i>	vói, <i>you; vói, you.</i>
{ égli, lúi, éssó, <i>he; lúi, éssó, him.</i>	
{ élla, lèi, éssa, <i>she; lèi, éssa, her.</i>	
{ éssi, lóro, <i>they (masc.); lóro, éssi, them (masc.).</i>	
{ ésse, lóro, <i>they (fem.); lóro, ésse, them (fem.).</i>	

*It* must be rendered by a masculine or feminine form, according to the gender of the noun it represents. *It* as subject of an impersonal verb is regularly not expressed (see, however, **51, h**).

La casa è grandíssima, e intorno ad éssa c' è un giardino.	<i>The house is very large, and around it there is a garden.</i>
Non è véro.	<i>It isn't true.</i>
Piòve.	<i>It rains.</i>

1. The various pronouns of the third person are used as follows: In speaking of *things* the different forms of **éssó** are generally employed.

In speaking of *persons* **égli** (or **éssó**), **élla** (or **éssa**), pl. **éssi, ésse**, are used for the nominative in written Italian,<sup>1</sup> but in the spoken

<sup>1</sup> Italian formerly possessed also masc. **églino**, fem. **élleno**, *they*, for persons; likewise pl. **égli** (or **éi**) and **élle**.



language they are replaced by **lúi, lêi, lóro**. For the objective, **lúi, lêi, lóro** (sometimes **éssó, éssa, éssi, ésse**) are used both in conversation and in writing.

For *he who*, etc., see **42, b**.

Quêste côse sóno vére anch' **éssé**.

**Élla** párla con **lóro**.

**Lêi** è giòvane ma **lúi** è vècchio.

Vénnero da nói anch' **éssi**.

*These things are true, too.*

*She speaks with them.*

*She is young, but he is old.*

*They came to us, too.*

2. As the Italian verb denotes by its endings the person and number of its subject, the personal pronouns of the nominative case are generally omitted. When expressed (for clearness, emphasis, or euphony), they may precede or follow the verb; in dependent clauses they nearly always follow. The subject of an interrogative verb usually comes after it, as in English.

Parliámo di **lúi**.

Non vádo.

S' ío fóssi ricco cóme è **égli**.

Vêngono **éssi**?

*We speak of him.*

*I don't go.*

*If I were rich as he is.*

*Are they coming?*

3. The disjunctive reflexive pronoun of the third person is **sè**, which is masculine and feminine, singular and plural.

Lo fétero da **sè**.

*They did it by themselves.*

In the other persons **me, nói, te, vói** are used.

(a) Use the objective case and not, as in English, the nominative:

(1) When a pronoun of the third person may be regarded as the subject of an unexpressed verb:

Beáto **lúi**!

Tánto i genitóri che **lúi** sóno  
ricchi.

*Happy he!*

*His parents as well as he are rich.*

(2) When the pronoun stands in the predicate after the verb **éssere**:

Credêndo ch' ío fóssi **te**.

*Thinking I was you.*

But note carefully that *it is I*, etc., are **sóno ío, sêi tu, è lúi, è lêi, siámo nói, siête vói, sóno lóro**.

(b) (1) When the pronoun is at all *emphatic*, the *disjunctive* form *must* be used. In this case the conjunctive form is often inserted also.

Párlo a **vói** signóre.  
Mi piáce ánche a **me**.

*I speak to **you**, sir.*  
*It pleases **me** too.*

BUT

Vi párló.  
Mi piáce.

*I **speak** to you.*  
*It **pleases** me.*

(2) The disjunctive form must therefore *always* be used when the verb has two direct or two indirect objects.

Védo lúi e lèi.  
Lo do a **mío** pádre e a **te**.

*I see him and her.*  
*I give it to my father and to thee.*

(c) In speaking of a company, a class, or a people **nói álttri**, **vói álttri** (which are also written as one word) are used for **nói**, **vói**.

**Nói álttri** italiáni.  
**Vói álttri** pittóri.

*We Italians.*  
*You painters.*

(d) *With me, with thee, with himself, herself, themselves* are either **con me**, etc., or **méco**, **téco**, **séco**.

(e) *Myself, thyself, etc.*, used for emphasis with a pronoun or noun, are rendered by the adjective **stéssó**.

**Nói stéssi** la vedémmo.

*We saw her ourselves.*

(f) *One another, each other* is **l' un l' áltro**.

**Ci amiámo l' un l' áltro**.

*We love one another.*

(g) In Florence **élla** is often shortened into **la** (plural **le**), which is used of both persons and things. In poetry **égli** becomes **éi**.

**La** non viène.

*She doesn't come.*

**Páre** che **la** si pôssa tenér in  
máno.

*It looks as if it might be held in the  
hand.*

**Éi** táce.

*He is silent.*

(h) In impersonal phrases like *it is* the subject, *it*, is occasionally expressed in Italian; it is then translated **égli**, which in the spoken language is shortened into **gli**.

**Gli** è che.

*It is because.*

**52. 1.** The usual form of address in Italy is **Élla**<sup>1</sup> (or **élla**), objective **Lêi** (or **lêi**); in conversation **Élla** is replaced by **Lêi** (or **lêi**). This word really means *it*, and takes the verb in the third person; but an adjective or past participle modifying it agrees in gender with the person it represents.

The plural of **Élla** is **Lóro** (or **lóro**), which takes the verb in the third person plural.

The use of the capital initial in all these words is optional. It marks respect, and is sometimes useful to distinguish *you* from *she*.

<b>Lêi</b> or <b>Élla</b> è tedéscó, signóre.	<i>You are German, sir.</i>
Signorína Néri, <b>Lêi</b> or <b>Élla</b> fu lasciáta sóla.	<i>Miss Neri, you were left alone.</i>
Sóno liêto che <b>La</b> stía bène (see <b>51</b> , <i>g</i> ).	<i>I'm glad you are well.</i>
<b>E Lóro</b> , dóve vánno?	<i>And you, where are you going?</i>
<b>Lóro</b> êrano già partíti.	<i>You were already gone.</i>
Signoríne, <b>lóro</b> sóno mólto studiósse.	<i>Young ladies, you are very studious.</i>

Like other personal pronouns, **Élla** and **Lóro** are very often omitted in the nominative.

<b>Lêi</b> è trôppo gentíle or è trôppo gentíle.	<i>You are too kind.</i>
Cóme stánno?	<i>How do you (pl.) do?</i>

The conjunctive forms of **Élla** are **La**, **Le** (or **la**, **le**), those of **Lóro** are **Li**, **Le**, **Lóro** (or **li**, **le**, **lóro**); they occupy the same positions and undergo the same modifications as the corresponding pronouns of the third person (see **48**, **49**, **50**).

Note that regularly in the singular the same pronoun is used, whether one is addressing a man or a woman; although occasionally **lo**, **gli** are substituted for **la**, **le** in speaking to a

<sup>1</sup> Standing for *Vôstra Signoría*, *your lordship*, or *ladyship*, or some other title of the feminine gender.

male. In the *plural*, however, if the pronoun be a direct object, the sexes are regularly distinguished.

The reflexive pronoun of **Élla** and **Lóro** is **si**.

Le prométto di visitarla.	<i>I promise (you) to visit you.</i>
Glíelo do.	<i>I give it to you.</i>
La prêgo d' accomodársi.	<i>I beg you to seat yourself.</i>
Vídi Lêi e il bábbó.	<i>I saw you and your father (see 51, b, 2).</i>
Díco lóro.	<i>I tell you (pl.).</i>
Le cercáva.	<i>I was looking for you (fem. pl.).</i>
Non pôsso vedérli.	<i>I can't see you (masc. pl.).</i>
Si divêrtono, signoríni?	<i>Are you enjoying yourselves, young gentlemen?</i>

The possessive of **Élla** is **Súo** (or **súo**); that of **Lóro** is **Lóro** (or **lóro**). See 45.

La Súa gradíta lèttera.	<i>Your welcome letter.</i>
-------------------------	-----------------------------

2. **Vói** is the form of address oftenest found in books; it is used sometimes in conversation also, but only toward inferiors or toward equals with whom one is on familiar terms.<sup>1</sup> It is employed for both plural and singular (like English *you*), although its verb is always plural; an adjective or participle modifying it agrees in gender and number with the person or persons it represents.

Vói qui, Piétro?	<i>You here, Peter?</i>
Vói siête álti tútti e dúe.	<i>You are tall, both of you.</i>

3. In speaking to an intimate friend, a near relative, a child, or an animal, the only form of address is **tu**. **Tu** is used also, like English *thou*, in poetry and poetic prose. The plural of **tu** is **vói**.

Ti chiámo Enríco.	<i>I call you Henry.</i>
Dóve sêi tu?	<i>Where art thou?</i>
Vôglio vedérvi, figliuóli miêi.	<i>My children, I wish to see you.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Though advocated by some of the best writers and speakers of Italian, the use of **vói** instead of **Lêi** and **Lóro** has not become general. In Southern Italy, however, **vói** is the form popularly used.

## AUXILIARY VERBS

**53.** The irregular verbs *êssere*, *to be*, and *avére*, *to have*, are the ones most used as auxiliaries in Italian. They are conjugated as follows:

(a) INFINITIVES: *êssere*, *to be*; *êssere státo*, *to have been*.

PARTICIPLES: *essêndo*, *being*; *essêndo státo*, *having been*; *státo*, *been*.

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE
<i>I am, etc.</i>	<i>I was, etc.</i>	<i>I was, etc.</i>	<i>I shall be, etc.</i>
sóno	êra	fúi	sarò
sêi	êri	fôsti	sarái
è	êra	fu	sarà
siámo	eravámo	fúmmo	sarémo
siête	eraváte	fôste	saréte
sóno	êrano	fúrono	saránno

PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	SECOND PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
<i>I have been, etc.</i>	<i>I had been, etc.</i>	<i>I had been, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been, etc.</i>
sóno státo (státa) etc.	êra státo (státa) etc.	fúi státo (státa) etc.	sarò státo (státa) etc.
siámo státi (státe) etc.	eravámo státi (státe) etc.	fúmmo státi (státe) etc.	sarémo státi (státe) etc.

IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE		PAST FUTURE
<i>Be, etc.</i>	PRESENT	PAST	<i>I should be, etc.</i>
	<i>I be, etc.</i>	<i>I were, etc.</i>	
síi or sía	sía	fóssi	sarêi
	sía	fóssi	sarésti
	sía	fósse	sarêbbe
siámo	siámo	fóssimo	sarémmo
siáte	siáte	fóste	saréste
	síano or síeno	fóssero	sarêbbero

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT  
PERFECT  
*I have been, etc.*

PAST  
PERFECT  
*I had been, etc.*

PAST FUTURE  
PERFECT  
*I should have  
been, etc.*

sia státo (státa)

fóssi státo (státa)

sarèi státo  
(státa)  
etc.

etc.

etc.

(b) INFINITIVES: *avére, to have; avére avúto, to have had.*

PARTICIPLES: *avèndo, having; avèndo avúto, having had; avúto, had.*

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT  
*I have, etc.*

PAST DESCRIPTIVE  
*I had, etc.*

PAST ABSOLUTE  
*I had, etc.*

FUTURE  
*I shall have, etc.*

ho

avéva

èbbi

avrò

hái

avévi

avésti

avràí

ha

avéva

èbbe

avrà

abbíamo

avevâmo

avémmo

avrémmo

avéte

avevâte

avéste

avréte

hánno

avévano

èbbero

avránno

PRESENT  
PERFECT  
*I have had, etc.*

PAST  
PERFECT  
*I had had, etc.*

SECOND PAST  
PERFECT  
*I had had, etc.*

FUTURE  
PERFECT  
*I shall have had,  
etc.*

ho avúto  
etc.

avéva avúto  
etc.

èbbi avúto  
etc.

avrò avúto  
etc.

IMPERATIVE  
*Have, etc.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PAST FUTURE  
*I should have,  
etc.*

PRESENT  
*I have, etc.*

PAST  
*I had, etc.*

ábbi

ábbia

avéssi

avrèi

ábbi or ábbia

avéssi

avrésti

ábbia

avésse

avrèbbe

abbíamo

abbíamo

avéssimo

avrémmo

abbíate

abbíate

avéste

avréste

abbiano

avéssero

avrèbbero

PRESENT  
PERFECT  
*I have had, etc.*

PAST  
PERFECT  
*I had had, etc.*

PAST FUTURE  
PERFECT  
*I should have  
had, etc.*

ábbia avúto  
etc.

avéssi avúto  
etc.

avrèi avúto  
etc.

**54. 1.** The auxiliary of the passive is *èssere*, *to be*.

L' esêrcito **fu** sconfitto.

*The army was defeated.*

2. The future (*shall, will*) and the past future or conditional (*should, would*) are formed in Italian without any auxiliary.

Io **andrò** ed egli **verrà**.

*I shall go, and he will come.*

Vorrêi vederlo.

*I should like to see him.*

3. The auxiliary of the perfect, past perfect, second past perfect, and future perfect tenses is *avére*, *to have*, if the verb be active and transitive.

If the verb be passive, reflexive, or reciprocal, the auxiliary is always *èssere*. For the definition of a reflexive verb, see **47, 2**, on p. 36.

If the verb be intransitive, the auxiliary is generally *èssere*, but sometimes *avére*.<sup>1</sup>

Ho parlato.

*I have spoken.*

Avévano fatto quèste còse.

*They had done these things.*

Mi sòno fatto mále.

*I have hurt myself.*

Le dònne si érano sbagliáte.

*The women had made a mistake.*

Sarò venúto.

*I shall have come.*

È nevicáto.

*It has snowed.*

Avéva viaggiáto.

*He had traveled.*

(a) A past participle used with the auxiliary *èssere* must agree with its *subject* in gender and number.

La ragázza è tornáta.

*The girl has returned.*

Le dònne si sòno disputáte.

*The women have disputed.*

But when the verb has a reflexive pronoun as *indirect* object, and some other word as *direct* object, the past participle may agree with the subject, or with the direct object, or remain invariable.

La sorélla si è fátti mále.

*Our sister has hurt herself.*

Ci siámo fátti onóre.

*We have done ourselves credit.*

Ci siámo dáta (or dáto) paróla  
d' onóre.

*We have pledged our word of honor.*

<sup>1</sup> The use of *avére* with intransitive verbs must be learned by practice.

(b) A past participle used with **avére** may or may not agree with its *direct object*, according to the choice of the writer. It usually does not agree when the object follows; and it nearly always does agree when the object is a personal pronoun preceding the verb.

La birra che avéva bevúto (or bevúta).	<i>The beer he had drunk.</i>
Ho vedúto mólte còse.	<i>I have seen many things.</i>
Li ho trováti.	<i>I have found them.</i>

(c) *To be*, expressing a state or condition, is often rendered by **stáre** (92, 4), instead of **èssere**. **Stáre per** or **èssere per** (followed by the infinitive) means *to be on the point of*.

Sto bène.	<i>I'm well.</i>
Cóme sta?	<i>How are you?</i>
Stáva per uscíre.	<i>I was just going out.</i>

(d) English *am* (or *was*) + the present participle, when expressing duration, is rendered either by the simple present (or past descriptive) or by the same tense of **stáre**<sup>1</sup> + the present participle; when denoting futurity, it is translated by the future (or past future), sometimes by the present (or past descriptive).

Cammináva.	<i>He was walking.</i>
Státe lavorádo.	<i>You are working.</i>
Leggévano or stávano leggêdo.	<i>They were reading.</i>
Mêdito or sto meditádo.	<i>I am meditating.</i>
Díce che verrà (or viêne).	<i>He says he is coming.</i>
Dísse che verrêbbe.	<i>He said he was coming.</i>

(e) A verb with the auxiliary *used to* (or *would* = *used to*) is translated either by the simple past descriptive, or by the infinitive with **solére**, *to be accustomed* (92, 14).

Vi andáva (or soléva andáre) ógni séra.	<i>He used to go (or would go) there every evening.</i>
--	---

(f) **Veníre**, *to come* (92, 166), and **rimanére**, *to remain* (92, 16), are sometimes used as auxiliaries in the simple tenses of the passive,

<sup>1</sup> **Andáre** (92, 1) and **veníre** (92, 166) are sometimes used instead of **stáre**.



instead of **éssere**. **Andáre**, *to go* (92, 1), is similarly used, but always implying duty or obligation.

I ládri <b>vénnero</b> arrestáti.	<i>The thieves were arrested.</i>
<b>Rimáse</b> sorprésa.	<i>She was surprised.</i>
Il fuéile non <b>va</b> toccáto.	<i>The gun mustn't be touched.</i>

(g) The English auxiliary *do* is not expressed in Italian.

Non viène.	<i>He does not come.</i>
------------	--------------------------

(h) *To have a thing done* is **far fáre úna còsa** (92, 2).

Il re lo <b>féce</b> ammazzáre.	<i>The king had him killed.</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

**55.** The third person of the passive is very often replaced by the reflexive construction with **si**:

<b>Si</b> raccontá.	<i>It is related.</i>
Quésto líbro <b>si</b> légge.	<i>This book is read.</i>
La spáda che mi <b>si</b> diéde.	<i>The sword that was given me.</i>
Quélle còse <b>si</b> facévano.	<i>Those things were done.</i>

Many writers always make the verb agree with its subject in number; but in popular speech the verb is nearly always in the singular when its subject follows (as if **si** were the subject of the verb, and the original subject were the object):

<b>Si védono</b> (or <b>véde</b> ) moltís-sime còse.	<i>Many things are seen.</i>
Non <b>si può</b> (or <b>pôssono</b> ) leggere quésti líbri.	<i>These books can't be read.</i>

**Si** belonging to a dependent infinitive regularly goes with the main verb (see 48, a).

The construction with **si** is generally used also to render the English indefinite *they* followed by a verb: as **si díce**, *they say*. In this sense it is employed with neuter as well as with transitive verbs: as **si va spésso**, *people often go*. See also 63, a. In this construction an object pronoun may precede **si**: as **lo si fa**, *it is done*.

**56.** Following are synopses of the compound tenses of transitive, neuter, reflexive, and passive verbs. In the paradigms given henceforth these forms will be omitted.

(a) Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of **trovâre**, *to find*, and **venîre**, *to come*:

avére trováto, <i>to have found.</i>	êssere venúto, <i>to have come.</i>
avêndo trováto, <i>having found.</i>	essêndo venúto, <i>having come.</i>
ho trováto, <i>I have found.</i>	sóno venúto, <i>I have come.</i>
avéva trováto, <i>I had found.</i>	êra venúto, <i>I had come.</i>
êbbi trováto, <i>I had found.</i>	fúi venúto, <i>I had come.</i>
avrò trováto, <i>I shall have found.</i>	sarò venúto, <i>I shall have come.</i>
avrêi trováto, <i>I should have found.</i>	sarêi venúto, <i>I should have come.</i>
ábbia trováto, <i>I have found.</i>	sía venúto, <i>I have come.</i>
avéssi trováto, <i>I had found.</i>	fóssi venúto, <i>I had come.</i>

(b) Following is a synopsis of the compound tenses of **alzârsi**, *(to raise one's self)*, *to get up*, and **andârsene**,<sup>1</sup> *to go away*.

INFINITIVE: PAST	êssersi alzáto	êssersene andáto
PARTICIPLE: PAST	essêndosi alzáto	essêndosene andáto
INDICATIVE: PRES. PERF.	mi sóno alzáto	me ne sóno andáto
PAST PERFECT	mi êra alzáto	me ne êra andáto
SECOND PAST PERFECT	mi fúi alzáto	me ne fúi andáto
FUTURE PERFECT	mi sarò alzáto	me ne sarò andáto
PAST FUTURE: PERFECT	mi sarêi alzáto	me ne sarêi andáto
SUBJUNCTIVE: PRES. PERF.	mi sía alzáto	me ne sía andáto
PAST PERFECT	mi fóssi alzáto	me ne fóssi andáto

(c) Following is a synopsis of the entire passive of **amâre**, *to love*:

INFINITIVE: PRESENT	êssere amáto, <i>to be loved.</i>
PAST	êssere státo amáto, <i>to have been loved.</i>
PARTICIPLE: PRESENT	essêndo amáto, <i>being loved.</i>
PAST	essêndo státo amáto, <i>having been loved.</i>
INDICATIVE: PRESENT	sóno amáto, <i>I am loved.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT	sóno státo amáto, <i>I have been loved.</i>
PAST DESCRIPTIVE	êra amáto, <i>I was loved.</i>
PAST PERFECT	êra státo amáto, <i>I had been loved.</i>
PAST ABSOLUTE	fúi amáto, <i>I was loved.</i>
SECOND PAST PERFECT	fúi státo amáto, <i>I had been loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> **Andârsene** is composed of the verb **andâre**, *to go*, the reflexive **si**, and the adverb **ne**, *thence* (see 47, a).

FUTURE	sarò amáto, <i>I shall be loved.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	sarò státo amáto, <i>I shall have been loved.</i>
PAST FUTURE	sarêi amáto, <i>I should be loved.</i>
PERFECT	sarêi státo amáto, <i>I should have been loved.</i>
IMPERATIVE	sii amáto, <i>be loved.</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE: PRESENT	sía amáto, <i>I be loved.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT	sía státo amáto, <i>I have been loved.</i>
PAST	fóssi amáto, <i>I were loved.</i>
PAST PERFECT	fóssi státo amáto, <i>I had been loved.</i>

57. *May, might, can, could* are generally rendered by the proper tense of **potére**<sup>1</sup>; *must, ought, shall = must, should = ought*, by **dovére**<sup>1</sup>; *will and would* expressing volition, by **volére**.<sup>1</sup>

Può éssere véro.	<i>It may be true.</i>
Non potéva parláre.	<i>He couldn't speak.</i>
Dêve pagárlo.	<i>He must pay him, he shall pay him.</i>
Dovrêbbe fárlo.	<i>He ought to do it, he should do it.</i>
Vôglio sapére.	<i>I will know.</i>
Non vorrêi andáre.	<i>I wouldn't go.</i>

Note that *ought* must be expressed by the past future (or conditional) of **dovére**.

Dovrémmo parláre.	<i>We ought to speak.</i>
Avrêi dovúto fárlo.	<i>I ought to have done it.</i>

No preposition intervenes between these verbs and the dependent infinitive.

Hánno potúto dormíre.	<i>They have been able to sleep.</i>
Potrêmo partíre.	<i>We shall be able to start.</i>
Dovémmo veníre.	<i>We had to come.</i>
Dovréte trovár-la.	<i>You will have to find her.</i>
Vorrà tornáre.	<i>He will want to return.</i>
Vorrêi sapére.	<i>I should like to know.</i>

These verbs are not defective, like the English modal auxiliaries; hence in Italian the tense is expressed by the

<sup>1</sup> See 92, 21, 8, 19. The auxiliary of these verbs is regularly **avére**; but some writers use with them the auxiliary that belongs to the dependent infinitive: as **hánno potúto veníre** or **sóno potúti veníre**, *they have been able to come*.

auxiliary itself, and not by the dependent infinitive. To find the proper form of **potére**, **dovére**, or **volére**, replace *may*, etc., by the correct tense of *to be able*; *must*, etc., by *to be obliged*; *will*, etc., by *to want* or *to like*: as *I could have said it*=*I should have* (**avrêi**) *been able* (**potúto**) *to say it* (**dírlo**)=**avrêi potúto dírló**.

**Avrêbbe dovúto tacére.**  
**Avrémmo volúto restáre.**

*He ought to have kept still.*  
*We would have stayed.*

(a) *Must* is also expressed by the impersonal verb **bisognáre**, *to be necessary*, followed by the infinitive or by **che**, *that*, with the subjunctive. *To have to* is **avére da**.

**Bisógna fárló.**  
**Bisógna che andíámo.**  
**Ho da scrívere úna lèttera.**

*It must be done.*  
*We must go.*  
*I have to write a letter.*

(b) *To be able* meaning *to know how* is **sapére** (see 92, 6). *Not to be able to help* doing a thing is **non poté a méno di non** (with infinitive) or **non poté fáre a méno di** (with infinitive).

**Non sêppe fárló.**  
**Sa lêggere e scrívere.**  
**Non poté a méno di non rídere.**

*He couldn't do it.*  
*He can read and write.*  
*He couldn't help laughing.*

## REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS

**58.** Italian verbs are divided into four conjugations, according as the infinitive ending is **-áre**, accented **-ére**, unaccented **-ere** (or **-rre**), or **-íre**. Regular verbs of the second and third conjugations are, however, inflected just alike.

(a) The final **e** of the infinitive may be dropped before any word except one beginning with **s** impure.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 10, b; 14, b. Italians find it hard to pronounce three consecutive consonants of which the middle one is **s**.

## THE REGULAR VERB

59. **Parlâre**, *to speak*, will serve as a model for the first conjugation. All compound tenses are omitted (see 56):

## INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES

**parlâre**                      **parlândo**                      **parlâto**

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE
pârlo	parlâva	parlâi	parlerò
pârli	parlâvi	parlâsti	parlerâi
pârla	parlâva	parlò	parlerà
parliâmo	parlavâmo	parlâmmo	parlerêmo
parlâte	parlavâte	parlâte	parlerête
pârlano	parlâvano	parlârôno	parlerânno

IMPERATIVE                      SUBJUNCTIVE                      PAST FUTURE

	PRESENT	PAST	
	pârli	parlâssi	parlerêi
pârla	pârli	parlâssi	parlerêsti
	pârli	parlâsse	parlerêbbe
parliâmo	parliâmo	parlâssimo	parlerêmmo
parlâte	parliâte	parlâte	parlerêste
	pârlino	parlâssero	parlerêbbero

(a) Verbs whose infinitives end in **-care** or **-gare** insert **h** after the **c** or **g** in all forms where those letters precede **e** or **i**:

Pâghi (pagâre).                      *Let him pay.*  
 Cercherò (cercâre).                      *I shall search.*

Verbs in **-ciare** and **-giare** drop the **i** before **e** or **i**:

Mangi (mangiâre).                      *Thou eatest.*  
 Comincerà<sup>1</sup> (cominciâre).                      *He will begin.*

But all other verbs in **-iare** drop the **i** only before another **i**:

Picchi (picchiâre).                      *Let him strike.*  
 Pigli (pigliâre).                      *Thou takest.*

BUT

Picchierà, piglierêi.                      *He will strike, I should take.*

<sup>1</sup> Some writers retain the **i** before **e**; as **comincerà**.

(b) The verbs **giocáre**, **rotáre**, **sonáre** generally change **o** of the stem into **uo** in all forms where that vowel is accented:

Suôni.

*Let him play.*

Giuôcano.

*They play.*

**Rinnováre** and **tonáre** may make the same change. The **u** is sometimes used throughout.

**60.** Verbs of the second and third conjugations<sup>1</sup> are inflected like **credere**, *to believe*:

#### INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES

**credere**

**credêdo**

**credúto**

#### INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE
<b>crêdo</b>	<b>credéva</b>	<b>credéi (credêtti)</b>	<b>crederò</b>
<b>crédi</b>	<b>credévi</b>	<b>credésti</b>	<b>crederái</b>
<b>crêde</b>	<b>credéva</b>	<b>credè (credêtte)</b>	<b>crederà</b>
<b>credíamo</b>	<b>credevámo</b>	<b>credémmo</b>	<b>crederémo</b>
<b>credéte</b>	<b>credeváte</b>	<b>credéste</b>	<b>crederéte</b>
<b>crédono</b>	<b>credévano</b>	<b>credérono (credêtterò)</b>	<b>crederánno</b>

#### IMPERATIVE

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PAST FUTURE

	PRESENT	PAST	
	<b>créda</b>	<b>credéssi</b>	<b>crederèi</b>
<b>crédi</b>	<b>créda</b>	<b>credéssi</b>	<b>crederésti</b>
	<b>créda</b>	<b>credésse</b>	<b>crederébbe</b>
<b>credíamo</b>	<b>credíamo</b>	<b>credéssimo</b>	<b>crederémmo</b>
<b>credéte</b>	<b>credíate</b>	<b>credéste</b>	<b>crederéste</b>
	<b>crédano</b>	<b>credéssero</b>	<b>crederébbero</b>

The following verbs and their compounds do not have in the past absolute the forms in parentheses:

<b>báttete</b>	<b>méscere</b>	<b>strídere</b>
<b>compêtere</b>	<b>miêtere</b>	<b>têssere</b>
<b>convêrgere</b>	<b>páscere</b>	<b>tóndere</b>
<b>divêrgere</b>	<b>prúdere</b>	
<b>lúcere</b>	<b>ripêtere</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Many grammars and dictionaries class these two together as the "second conjugation."

Verbs in **-cere** and **-gere** insert after the **c** or **g** an **i** before the **u** of the past participle, but not before the **o** or **a** of the singular or third person plural of the present indicative or subjunctive:

méscere; mésc*o*, mésc*i*, mésc*e*, mesciámo, mescéte, mésc*o*no; mésc*a*, etc., mésc*o*no; mesciúto.

**61.** Most verbs of the fourth conjugation<sup>1</sup> are inflected like **finíre**, to *finish*:

# INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES

**finíre                  finêndo                  finíto**

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE
finísco	finíva	finíi	finirò
finísci	finívi	finísti	finirái
finísce	finíva	finì	finirà
finiámo	finivámo	finím <i>mo</i>	finirémo
finíte	finiváte	finíste	finiréte
finíscono	finívano	finírono	finiráno

IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE		PAST FUTURE
	PRESENT	PAST	
	finísca	finíss <i>i</i>	finirêi
finísci	finísca	finíss <i>i</i>	finirésti
	finísca	finísse	finirêbbe
finiámo	finiámo	finíss <i>imo</i>	finirém <i>mo</i>
finíte	finiáte	finíste	finiréste
	finíscono	finíss <i>ero</i>	finirêbbero

Though inflected like **finíre** in all other parts, **dormíre**, **fuggíre**,<sup>2</sup> **pentíre**, **sentíre**, **servíre**, **vestíre** are always, **aboríre**, **bollíre**, and verbs in **-vertíre** are generally, and **assorbíre**, **inghiottíre**, **mentíre**, **nutríre**, **tossíre** are often, in the present indicative, imperative, and subjunctive, conjugated

<sup>1</sup> Many grammars and dictionaries call this the "third conjugation."

<sup>2</sup> **Fuggíre** inserts no extra **i** (see last sentence of **60**).

after the model below. **Partíre** and **sortíre** are, when transitive, inflected like **finíre**, when intransitive, like **sentíre**.<sup>1</sup>

INDICATIVE	IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
sêto		sêta
sêti	sêti	sêta
sênte		sêta
sentiâmo	sentiâmo	sentiâmo
sentíte	sentíte	sentiâte
sêntono		sêntano

62. The present participle of all verbs is invariable.

Stavámo parlándo.

*We were speaking.*

63. In all conjugations a form of the first person singular of the past descriptive ending in **-o** instead of **-a** is nearly always used in conversation, and occurs often in the works of modern authors:

Leggévo.

*I was reading.*

(a) In popular speech the first person plural of all tenses is generally replaced by the third person singular preceded by **si**:

Nói áltri **si crede**.

*We believe.*

Nói **si éra venúti**.

*We had come.*

Ci **si decíse**.

*We decided (ourselves).*

(b) Final **o** of the third person plural is frequently omitted:

Párlan di lúi.

*They speak of him.*

Forms in **-ânno** sometimes drop **-no**:

Dirán tútto.

*They will tell everything.*

(c) The past descriptive endings **-avámo**, **-aváte**, **-evámo**, **-eváte**, **-ivámo**, **-iváte** are often pronounced **-ávamo**, **-ávate**, etc.

(d) Occasionally, especially in poetry, **-at-** is omitted from the ending of the past participle of the first conjugation: **destáto** = **désto**.

<sup>1</sup> Compounds are conjugated like their simple verbs.



## THE IRREGULAR VERB

64. Certain parts of Italian irregular verbs are always regular: the example given below will show which they are. **Êssere** (see 53, *a*) is an exception to all rules.

65. Many irregular verbs that belong or once belonged to the third conjugation have the infinitive contracted (**fâre** for **fâcere**, **dîre** for **dîcere**, **condúrre** for **condúcere**): in this case the future and past future are formed from this contracted infinitive (**farò**, **dirêi**, **condurrêbbe**), while the present participle, the past descriptive and past subjunctive, and certain persons of the present and past absolute are formed from the uncontracted stem (**facêndo**, **dicéva**, **conduciâmo**).

66. **Pôrre** (for **pônere**), *to put*, a verb of the third conjugation, will serve to show which are the regular and which the irregular parts of irregular verbs: the forms printed in boldface are regular in all verbs except **dâre**, **dîre**, **êssere**, **fâre**, **stâre**; those in Roman type may be irregular.

## INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES

**pôrre**                      **ponêdo**                      pôsto

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE
pôngo	<b>ponéva</b>	pósi	porrò
póni	<b>ponévi</b>	<b>ponésti</b> <sup>2</sup>	porrái
pône	<b>ponéva</b>	póse	porrà
poniâmo	<b>ponevâmo</b>	<b>ponémmo</b> <sup>2</sup>	porrémo
<b>ponéte</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>ponevâte</b>	<b>ponéste</b> <sup>2</sup>	porréte
póngono	<b>ponévano</b>	pósero	porránno

<sup>1</sup> See 66, 4.

<sup>2</sup> See 66, 3.

IMPERATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE		PAST FUTURE
	PRESENT	PAST	
	póngá	ponéssi <sup>1</sup>	porrèi
póni	póngá	ponéssi	porrésti
	póngá	ponése	porrèbbe
poniámo	poniámo	ponéssimo	porrémmo
ponéte	poniáte	ponéste	porréste
	póngano	ponéssero	porrèbbero

It will be seen that the present participle, the past descriptive and past subjunctive, and certain persons of the present and past absolute are always regular.

1. **Dáre** and **stáre** have in the future and past future **darò**, **darèi**; **starò**, **starèi**. Otherwise the only irregularity in the future and past future is that they are contracted in many verbs even when the infinitive is uncontracted: as **vedére**, *to see*, **vedrò**; **veníre**, *to come*, **verrèi**.

2. From the first person singular of the past absolute the other irregular persons can be constructed, the third person singular by changing the ending **-i** to **-e**, the third person plural by adding **-ro** to the third person singular.<sup>2</sup>

3. The *regular* persons of the past absolute and the whole past subjunctive are slightly irregular in **dáre** and **stáre**, which substitute **e** for **a** in those forms (**désti**, **démmo**, **déste**, **déssi**; **stésti**, **stémmo**, **stéste**, **stéssi**).

4. **Díre** (for **dícere**) and **fáre** (for **fácere**) have **díte** and **fáte** in the second person plural of the present indicative.

(a) Verbs whose stem ends in **-l**, **-n**, or **-r** often drop final **e** or **i** in the singular of the present indicative and imperative:

Non vuôl andáre.  
Viên qui.

*He will not go.*  
*Come here.*

See also **63**, *a*, *b*, *c*.

<sup>1</sup> See **66**, 3.

<sup>2</sup> This rule applies only to an *irregular* past absolute.

(b) The three forms of the imperative are exactly like the corresponding persons of the present indicative, except in *avére*, *sapére*, and *volére*, where they follow the subjunctive:

<b>ábbi</b>	<b>abbiámo</b>	<b>abbiáte</b>
<b>sáppi</b>	<b>sappiámo</b>	<b>sappiáte</b>
<b>vôgli</b>	<b>vogliámo</b>	<b>vogliáte</b>

and in *andáre*, *dáre*, *díre*, *fáre*, and *stáre*, which have in the singular *va'*, *da'*, *di'*, *fa'*, *sta'*.

(c) The third person plural of the present indicative can always be constructed from the first person singular, from which can be formed also the whole present subjunctive except the first and second persons plural: these can be made from the first person plural of the present indicative.

EXCEPTIONS to this rule are *andáre*, *avére*, *dáre*, *fáre*, *sapére*, and *stáre*, which have in the third person plural of the present indicative *vánno*, *hánno*, *dánno*, *fánno*, *sánno*, *stánno*; while *avére*, *dáre*, *sapére*, and *stáre* have in the present subjunctive *ábbia*, *día*, *sáppia*, *stía*.

**67.** With the aid of the above notes any verb except *èssere* can be constructed from the infinitive, the participles (the present participle often being necessary to show the uncontracted form of the infinitive), the present indicative, and the first person singular of the past absolute and future. A list of irregular verbs begins on page 80.

(a) In general, compound verbs not differing in conjugation from their simple verbs will be omitted from this list. All compounds of *dáre* and *fáre* are accented on the same syllable as the simple verbs:

<b>Fa.</b>	<i>He does.</i>	<b>Disfà.</b>	<i>He undoes.</i>
------------	-----------------	---------------	-------------------

The compounds of *stáre* demand special mention: *ristáre*, *soprastáre*, *sottostáre*, *sovrastáre* are inflected like *stáre* (*ristà*, *soprastètti*, *sottostàno*); *distáre* has no present participle, is regular in the present of all moods (*dísto*, etc.), but otherwise is inflected

like *stáre* (*distêtti*, etc.); *constáre*, *contrastáre*, *instáre*, *ostáre*, *prestáre*, *restáre*, *sostáre* are regular throughout (*cônsta*, *contrástano*, *instái*, *ostárono*, *presterò*, *rêsti*, *sostássì*).

68. In old Italian and in poetry both regular and irregular verbs differ in many ways from the normal types: some of the commonest variations are given below.

(a) In the first and third persons singular and the third person plural of the past descriptive **v** is often dropped, but never in the first conjugation: *voléva*=*voléa* (also *volía*); *finívano*=*finíano*. Some of these forms are not uncommon in modern prose.

(b) The past future endings *-êi*, *-êbbe*, *-êbbero* are generally replaced in poetry by *-ía*, *-ía*, *-íano*: *crederêi*=*credería*.

(c) The future endings *-ò*, *-ánno* are sometimes replaced by *-ággio* or *-ábbo*, *-ággiono* or *-ábbono*: *amerò*=*amerággio*; *ameránno*=*amerábbono*.

(d) In the third person plural of the past absolute *-no* or *-ono* is often dropped: *amárono*=*amâro* or *amâr* (also *amôrno*, *amônno*). In the third person singular we find *amáo*, *credéo*, *sentío*.

(e) Final *-ero* is often replaced by *-ono*: *avrêbbero*=*avrêbbono*.

(f) In the first person plural final *o* is often dropped, and then the **m** sometimes becomes **n**: *andiámo*=*andiám* or *andián*.

(g) In the first person plural of the present indicative of the second and third conjugations *-iámo* may be replaced by *-émo*.

(h) Final *-íano*, wherever it occurs (also *-éano* in the imperfect), may be replaced by *-íeno* or *-iêno*: *avévano*=*aviêno*.

(i) At the end of a word we often find **e** for **i**, sometimes **i** for **e**: *pênsi*=*pênsè*; *ascoltáte*=*ascoltáti*.

(j) **E** is sometimes added to a word ending in an accented vowel: *amò*=*amôe*.

## MOODS AND TENSES

**69.** The English gerund in *-ing* used as subject, predicate nominative, or direct object of a verb must be rendered in Italian by the *infinitive*, nearly always preceded by the definite article.

Mi piáce il viaggiáre.	<i>I like traveling.</i>
Rifársela cógli animáli è da sciôcchi.	<i>Taking vengeance on animals is folly.</i>
La nôstra prima cúra fu il cercáre úna pensióne.	<i>Our first care was hunting up a boarding house.</i>
Ôdio lo studiáre.	<i>I hate studying.</i>

**70.** The English gerund preceded by a preposition is translated as follows:

1. If the preposition is a necessary part of the thought, it is expressed in Italian, and the English gerund is rendered by the infinitive with the definite article. This article is, however, omitted (unless it would be used in English) after the following prepositions:

di, <i>of</i> .	invéce di, <i>instead of</i> .	sénza, <i>without</i> .
dôpo di, <i>after</i> .	prima di, <i>before</i> .	
Óltre il fáre scarabôcchi scríve mále.	<i>Besides making blots he writes badly.</i>	
Parlái cóntra il trárre útile di quélla disgrázia.	<i>I spoke against utilizing that misfortune.</i>	
Il vízio di fumáre.	<i>The habit of smoking.</i>	
Ho l' abitúdine di coricármí tárdi.	<i>I am in the habit of going to bed late.</i>	
Invéce di dírmí tútto.	<i>Instead of telling me everything.</i>	
Príma di moríre.	<i>Before dying.</i>	
Parliámo sénza riflêttére.	<i>We speak without thinking.</i>	

2. If in English the omission of the preposition, although it made the construction awkward, would not essentially change the

meaning, the phrase is rendered in Italian by the present participle without any preposition.

Studiándo si impára.	(Through) studying we learn.
Dovréi corrispóndere álla súa cortesía ascoltándola.	I ought to acknowledge her courtesy (by) listening to her.
Partêndo incontrò un amíco.	(On) going away he met a friend.
Copiándo non fa erróri.	(In) copying he makes no mistakes.

3. *To amuse one's self by . . . and to weary one's self by . . . are divertírsi a . . . and affannársi a . . . with the infinitive:*

Si divêrte a tirár sássi. *He amuses himself throwing stones.*

Some other verbs often take this construction.

**71.** Following are some other rules for the use of the infinitive and participles:

(a) When any verb is used as an auxiliary, the mood and tense are expressed in that verb, and not in the dependent infinitive (see 57).

Avréi potúto fárló. *I could have done it.*

(b) After **fáre**, *to make* or *to have* (=to cause), **sentíre** and **udíre**, *to hear*, and **vedére**, *to see*, the Italian present infinitive is used to render an English past participle. After **lasciáre**, *to let*, and often after the preposition **da** an Italian active infinitive is used to translate a passive one in English.

Si fa capíre.	<i>He makes himself understood.</i>
Farò fáre un páio di scárpe.	<i>I shall have a pair of shoes made.</i>
L' ho sentíto díre.	<i>I have heard it said.</i>
Lo víde ammazzáre.	<i>He saw him killed.</i>
Si láscia ingannáre.	<i>He lets himself be deceived.</i>
Non c' è niênte da fáre.	<i>There is nothing to be done.</i>

(c) The Italian past participle is inflected like any other adjective. The present participle (which was originally an ablative gerund) is invariable.

When in English the present participle is used adjectively, without any verbal force whatsoever, it is translated, not by the

form we have called the participle, but by a verbal adjective, which can be formed from almost any Italian verb by changing the infinitive ending into **-ánte** for the first conjugation, and into **-ênte** for the others. This adjective may be used substantively. It was originally a present participle, and some Italian writers have used it as such.

Quésti vási sóno rótti.  
La dônna sta cucêndo.  
Stávano parlándo.  
Un animále parlánte.  
Ácqua bollênte.  
Dúe amánti.

*These vases are broken.*  
*The woman is sewing.*  
*They were speaking.*  
*A speaking animal.*  
*Boiling water.*  
*Two lovers.*

(d) A whole conditional clause (or protasis) is often replaced in Italian by a present participle, or by an infinitive with **a**.

Andándovi lo vedrêbbe.  
A bucársi êsce il sâgue.

*If he went there, he would see it.*  
*If you prick yourself, blood comes.*

(e) Writers sometimes use, instead of a clause in indirect discourse, an infinitive followed by the word that would have been subject of the clause.

Disse êssere quêsto l' uômo  
che cercavámo.

*He said this was the man we were  
looking for.*

**72.** In negative commands the infinitive is always used instead of the second person *singular* of the imperative.

Trôvalo.  
Non lo trováre.

*Find it.*  
*Do not find it.*

But the negative of **trovátelo** is **non lo trováte**.

**73.** When an action is represented as having taken place and still continuing, the English uses the present perfect or past perfect tense, the Italian the present or the past descriptive.

Stúdio l' italiáno da ôtto  
mési.

*I have studied Italian for eight  
months.*

**74.** In subordinate clauses referring to the future and introduced by a conjunction of time, where the present is often used in English, the future tense must be employed in Italian.

Quándo vi **andrò**, gliélo dirò.     *When I go there, I'll tell him.*

(a) The future is often used, without any idea of future time, to express probability.

**Sarà** uscito.

*He has probably gone out.*

**Avrà** mólto denáro. ,

*He probably has a great deal of money.*

**75.** The difference between the past descriptive (or imperfect) and the past absolute (or preterit) is this: the latter is used of an event that occurred at a definite date in the past, the former is used in a description or in speaking of an accessory circumstance or an habitual action in past time — the preterit is a narrative, the imperfect a descriptive tense.

The second past perfect (or preterit perfect) is used — instead of the past perfect (or pluperfect) — only after conjunctions meaning *as soon as* (**appéna che**, **súbito che**, **tôsto che**), and sometimes after **quándo**, *when*, or **dópo che**, *after*, when immediate sequence is denoted.<sup>1</sup>

**Entrò** méntre dormivámo.

*He came in while we slept.*

**Facévo** così ógni mattína.

*I did so every morning.*

**Lo féce** l' áнно scorso.

*He did it last year.*

**Tôsto che** l' **êbbe vísto**, uscì.

*As soon as he had seen it, he went.*

(a) In conversation the present perfect is often used instead of the past absolute, when the event is not remote. This use is, however, far more restricted than it is in French.

**Vi sóno andáto** iêri.

*I went there yesterday.*

<sup>1</sup> It is used also in phrases like: **in cinque minúti êbbe finíta la lèttera**, *in five minutes he had the letter finished.*



**76.** The past future (or conditional), like the English *should* and *would*, has two uses: in *indirect discourse* after a principal verb in a past tense it expresses the tense which in direct discourse would be future<sup>1</sup>; in the *conclusion* of a conditional sentence it is used when the conditional clause is (or, if expressed, would be) in the past subjunctive (see 77).

Dísse che lo farêbbe.

*He said he would do it.*

Se fósse véro lo crederêi.

*If it were true, I should believe it.*

Quésta cása mi converrêbbe.

*This house would suit me.*

**77.** When a condition is contrary to *present* fact, or consists of a more or less unlikely supposition referring to *future* time,<sup>2</sup> the conditional clause has the past (or imperfect) subjunctive, the conclusional clause has the past future (or conditional).

If the unreal condition refers to *past* time, the conditional clause has the past perfect subjunctive, the conclusional clause has the past future perfect.<sup>3</sup>

Otherwise both condition and conclusion are in the indicative.

Se l' avéssi te lo darêi.

*If I had it, I should give it thee.*

Se fósse tornáto l' avrêi vedúto.

*If he had returned, I should have seen him.*

Se venísse nói ce ne andrémmo.

*If he came, we should go.*

Se vi andássi morrêi.

*If I should go there, I should die.*

Se non è véro è ben trováto.

*If it isn't true, it's a good invention.*

Se lo féce sarà puníto.

*If he did it, he will be punished.*

<sup>1</sup> The perfect of the future or the conditional is sometimes used where the simple tense would be expected: *dísse che non l' avrêbbe fáto più*, he said he would do it no more.

<sup>2</sup> Rendered in English by the past, or by the auxiliary *should*.

<sup>3</sup> The imperfect indicative is occasionally used to replace the past or past perfect subjunctive of the condition (or protasis) and the past future or past future perfect of the conclusion (or apodosis): as *se veníva, mi dicéva tútto*, if he had come, he would have told me everything.

(a) The missing persons of the imperative are supplied from the present subjunctive. The past subjunctive is used to express a wish that is not likely to be realized.

Si <b>accômodi</b> .	<i>Be seated (sing.).</i>
<b>Stiano</b> zitti.	<i>Be quiet (plur.).</i>
<b>Sia</b> pûre.	<i>Be it so.</i>
<b>Vêngano</b> súbito.	<i>Let them come at once.</i>
<b>Fósse</b> pûre!	<i>Would it were so!</i>

(b) When a relative clause restricts its antecedent to one of all its possible conditions or actions, the verb of that relative clause is in the subjunctive, — the present subjunctive if the verb on which it depends be present or future, the past if it be past or past future.

Non c' è animále più bellíno d' un gátto giòvane che <b>fác-</b> <b>cia</b> il chiásso.	<i>There is no animal prettier than a kitten that is at play.</i>
Dóve troveréte un giòvine che <b>spôsi</b> vói?	<i>Where will you find a young man who will marry you?</i>
Vorrèi vedére un bel quádro che non <b>fósse</b> antíco.	<i>I should like to see a fine picture that is not old.</i>

(c) The verb of a subordinate clause depending on an impersonal verb, on a superlative, or on one of the words *first*, *last*, and *only*, is in the subjunctive. This rule does not apply to reflexive verbs, nor to affirmative phrases meaning *it is true* or *it is because*.

Bisognò ch' ío vi <b>andássi</b> .	<i>I had to go there.</i>
È giòsto che <b>síano</b> <b>puníti</b> .	<i>It's right they should be punished.</i>
Il più bello ch' ío <b>conósca</b> .	<i>The finest that I know.</i>
Si véde che non è cosí.	<i>You see it isn't so.</i>
È véro che ci <b>sóno státo</b> .	<i>It's true that I've been there.</i>

(d) The subjunctive is used after all conjunctions meaning *although*, *as if*, *unless*, *provided that*, *in order that*, *in such a way that* (denoting purpose), *before*, *until* (referring to future), *whenever*, *wherever*, *without*.

Benchè <b>stía</b> nascósto, lo tro- verò, dovúnque <b>sía</b> .	<i>Although he be hidden, I shall find him, wherever he is.</i>
Partirò a méno che égli non <b>vênga</b> .	<i>I shall go unless he comes.</i>

Ło féce perchè ıo venıssi.	<i>He did it that I might come.</i>
La divıse in mōdo che le dúe párti fōssero uguáli.	<i>He divided it in such a way that the two parts should be equal.</i>
Aspétta finchè ıo tórni.	<i>Wait until I return.</i>
Párti sénza che ti véda.	<i>Go without his seeing you.</i>

(e) The subjunctive is used after the indefinite words and phrases **quále che, qualúnque, chiúnque, checchè, per quánto.**

Chiúnque vēnga.	<i>Whoever comes.</i>
Qualúnque disgrázia che suc- cēda.	<i>Whatever misfortune happens.</i>
Per quánte vólte ci váda.	<i>However many times I go there.</i>
Per quánto rıcco égli sía.	<i>However rich he may be.</i>

(f) The verb of an indirect question is nearly always in the subjunctive when it depends on a main verb in a past tense.<sup>1</sup>

Domándano se il re è mōrto.	<i>They ask whether the king is dead.</i>
Domandò se il pádre fōsse uscıto.	<i>He asked whether his father was out.</i>

(g) In a clause dependent on a verb of saying the subjunctive is used if the main verb is negative, or interrogative, or in a past tense.<sup>1</sup>

It is generally not used, however, after an affirmative verb in a past tense when the author himself wishes to imply that the indirect statement is true.

Díce che la cōsa è chiarıssima.	<i>He says the thing is perfectly clear.</i>
Non díco che quésto sía véro.	<i>I don't say this is true.</i>
Dıssero che lo zıo fōsse amma- láto.	<i>They said their uncle was ill.</i>
Gli díssi che mi chiamáva En- rıco.	<i>I told him my name was Henry.</i>

(h) The subjunctive is used after verbs expressing causation, concession, desire, emotion, prevention, and uncertainty: i.e., after verbs of bringing about; granting, permitting; commanding, hoping, requesting, wishing; fearing, regretting, rejoicing; forbidding, hindering; being ignorant, denying, disbelieving, doubting, expect-

<sup>1</sup> The term *past tense* includes the past future.

ing, pretending, supposing, suspecting, thinking. But **speráre**, to hope, very often does not take the subjunctive.

Non so chi **síano**.

*I don't know who they are.*

Vorrèi che non **fósse accadúto**.

*I wish it had not happened.*

Supponiámo che **sía prováto**.

*Let us suppose that it is proved.*

Spèro che **verrà**.

*I hope he will come.*

(i) **Se**, if, is occasionally omitted before a past subjunctive; in this case the subject, if expressed, must follow the verb.

Sarèi felice **venísse égli**.

*I should be happy, should he come.*

## CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS, AND ADVERBS

### CONJUNCTIONS

78. The principal conjunctions are:

*after*, **dópo che**.

*also*, **ánche, púre**.

*although*, **benchè, sebbène, non ostánte che**.

*and*, **e**.

*as*, **cóme, quánto** (after **tánto**).

*as* (= *since*), **siccóme, poichè**.

*as fast as*, **vía vía che**.

*as if*, **cóme se, quási**.

*as long as*, **finchè**.

*as well as*, **cóme áncó**.

*because*, **perchè**.

*before*, **príma che, avánti che**.

*both . . . and*, **e . . . e**.

*but*, **ma**.

*either . . . or*, **o . . . o**.

*even if*, **ánche se, ancorchè**.

*except that*, **se non che**.

*for*, **chè**.

*granting that*, **dáto che**.

*however* (= *nevertheless*), **però, púre**.

*however* (before an adj.), **qualúnque, per quánto**.

*if*, **se** (occasionally **quándo, óve**):  
*in case*, **cáso**.

*in order that*, **perchè, acciochè, affinchè**.

*much less*, **non che**.

*neither . . . nor*, **nè . . . nè**.

*nevertheless*, **tuttavía, nondiméno, però**.

*nor*, **nè, nemméno, neppure**.

*nor . . . either*, **nemméno, neppure**.

*nor even*, **neánche, neppure**.

*not to say . . . but even*, **non che . . . ma**.

*or*, **o, ovvéro, ossía**.

*or else*, **ossía**.

*provided that*, **purchè**.

*rather*, **ánzi**.

*since* (temporal), **dacchè**.

*since* (causal), **poichè, siccóme**.

*so*, **dúnque, adúnque**.

*so that* (result), **di môdo che, sic-  
chè.**

*so that* (= *in order that*), **perchè.**

*than*, **che.**

*that*, **che.**

*that* (= *in order that*), **perchè.**

*then*, **dúnque.**

*therefore*, **dúnque, però, perciò,**  
**adúnque** (at the beginning of a  
clause).

*too*, **púre, ánche.**

*unless*, **a méno che non, eccétto  
che non, sénza che.**

*until*, **finchè non.**

*when*, **quándo.**

*whence*, **dónde.**

*where*, **dóve, óve, là dóve.**

*wherever*, **dovúnque.**

*whether*, **se.**

*while*, **méntre, méntre che.**

The final vowel of **ánche, che, dóve, neppúre**, and **óve** is generally elided before **e** or **i**.

(a) Of the above conjunctions the following require the subjunctive:

<b>acciochè</b>	<b>cóme se</b>	<b>príma che</b>
<b>affinchè</b>	<b>dáto che</b>	<b>purchè</b>
<b>a méno che non</b>	<b>dovúnque</b>	<b>qualúnque</b>
<b>ancorchè</b>	<b>eccétto che non</b>	<b>quási</b>
<b>avánti che</b>	<b>non ostánte che</b>	<b>sebbène</b>
<b>benchè</b>	<b>perchè meaning <i>in order that</i></b>	<b>sénza che</b>
<b>cáso</b>	<b>per quánto</b>	

For the use of **che**, *that*, with the subjunctive, see **77, c, g, h**. **Cóme** is occasionally used for **cóme se**, and then it takes the subjunctive. **Finchè** when referring to the future sometimes has the sense of **finchè non**, and then it generally takes the subjunctive. **Se** is followed by the subjunctive when it introduces an indirect question or statement dependent on a verb in a past tense, or a condition contrary to fact. **Quándo** and **óve**, meaning *if*, frequently take the subjunctive when **se** would not. — For examples, see **77, c, d, f, g, h**.

(b) **Che** cannot be omitted in Italian as *that* is in English:<sup>1</sup>

Dísse **che** fósse véro.

*He said it was true.*

**Se** can be omitted before an imperfect subjunctive (see **77, i**).

<sup>1</sup> It is omitted, however, in the following peculiarly Italian construction: **il ragázso paréva fósse felice**, *the boy seemed to be happy*; that is, between a verb of seeming and the subjunctive dependent on it, when in English the construction would be a verb of seeming with a dependent infinitive. It is occasionally omitted also after verbs of wishing, hoping, and fearing: as **spéro mi scríva prèsto**, *I hope you will write to me soon*.

(c) **E** and **o** are often written **ed** and **od** before a vowel.

Mío pádre **ed** ío.

*My father and I.*

(d) Between a verb of motion and an infinitive *and* is rendered by the preposition **a**.

Andrò **a** cercárllo.

*I'll go and look for it.*

(e) When **ánche**, *also* or *too*, relates to a personal pronoun, the disjunctive form of that pronoun must follow **ánche**, even if some form of the same pronoun has already been expressed.

Andrémo **ánche** **nói**.

*We shall go too.*

Párte anch' **égli**.

*He goes away too.*

Trovái **ánche** **lúi**.

*I found him too.*

Vénnero anch' **éssi**.

*They came too.*

Lo or me lo diêde **anche a me**.

*He gave it to me too.*

Ti piáce **ánche a te**.

*You like it too.*

## PREPOSITIONS

79. The principal prepositions are:

*about* (=approximately), **círca**.

*about* (=around), **intórno a**, **at-tórno a**.

*above*, **sópra**.

*according to*, **secóndo**.

*after*, **dópo**, **dópo di**.

*against*, **cóntra**, **cóntro**.

*along*, **lúngo**.

*among*, **fra**, **tra**.

*around*, **intórno a**, **attórno a**.

*as far as*, **fíno a**, **síno a**.

*as for*, **per**, **quánto a**, **in quánto a**.

*as to*, **rispétto a**.

*at*, **a**.

*because of*, **per motivo di**.

*before* (time), **príma di**, **innánzi**.

*before* (place), **davánti a**, **innánzi**.

*behind*, **diêtro**.

*below*, **sótto**.

*beside* (place), **accánto a**.

*besides*, *beside* (=in addition to), **óltre**.

*between*, **fra**, **tra**.

*beyond*, **óltre**, **al di là di**.

*by*, **da**, **accánto a** (=beside).

*by means of*, **per mêzzo di**.

*during*, **duránte**.

*except*, **tránne**, **eccétto**, **fuôri di**.

*from*, **da**, **fin da**.

*in*, **in**.

*in front of*, **davánti a**, **innánzi**.

*inside of*, **déntro di**.

*instead of*, **invéce di**.

*in the midst of*, **in mêzzo a**.

*into*, **in**.

*near*, **vicíno a**.

*of*, **di**.

*on*, **su** (before a vowel, **sur**), **sópra**.

*on this side of*, **al di qua di**.  
*on to*, **su** (before vowels, *sur*), **sópra**.  
*opposite*, **dirimpétto a**.  
*out of*, **da, di, fuôri di**.  
*outside of*, **fuôri di**.  
*over*, **sópra**.  
*round and round*, **tórno tórno a**.  
*since*, **da**.  
*to*, **a**.  
*toward*, **vêrso**.

*through*, **per**.  
*under*, **sótto**.  
*upon*, **su** (before vowels, *sur*), **sópra**.  
*up to*, **fíno a, síno a**.  
*with*, **con**.  
*within*, **fra, tra**.  
*within* (= *inside of*), **déntro di**.  
*without*, **sénza**.  
*without* (= *outside of*), **fuôri di**.

When governing a personal pronoun **cóntra**, **diétro**, **dópo**, **sénza**, **sópra**, **sótto**, and often **fra** and **vêrso** take **di** after them:

**sénza di me**, *without me*.

**fra di lóro**, *among themselves*.

After **con**, **in**, **per**, a word beginning with **s** impure generally prefixes **i**:<sup>1</sup>

**la stráda**, *the street*.

**in istráda**, *in the street*.

(a) *To* before the name of a country, after a verb of motion, is **in**.

**Andiámo in Fráncia**.

*Let us go to France*.

(b) *To* before an infinitive is rendered in Italian as follows:

### 1. After the verbs

**bastáre**, *suffice*

**fáre**, *make*

**sentíre**, *hear, feel*

**bisognáre**, *need*

**lasciáre**, *let*

**solére**, *be accustomed*

**conveníre**, *swit*

**parére**, *seem*

**udíre**, *hear*

**desideráre**, *desire*

**potére**, *can, be able*

**vedére**, *see*

**dovére**, *must, ought*

**sapére**, *know*

**volére**, *wish*

*to* before a following infinitive is omitted. It is omitted also in exclamations and indirect questions consisting only of an interrogative and an infinitive.

**Dovréi capíre**.

*I ought to understand.*

**Bisógna pensárci**.

*It is necessary to look out for it.*

**Potrémo veníre**.

*We shall be able to come.*

**Non sa che fáre nè dóve avvólgersi**.

*He doesn't know what to do nor where to turn.*

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 58, a.

2. After verbs of accustoming, attaining, beginning, compelling, continuing, hastening, helping, inviting, learning, preparing, teaching, and after verbs of motion, *to* before a following infinitive is **a**.

Andráanno **a** vedér-la.

*They will go to see her.*

Si affrettò **a** rispóndere.‡

*He hastened to reply.*

3. After all other verbs it is **di**; but *to* denoting purpose or result is **per**, and *to* indicating duty or necessity is **da**.

Gli díssi **di** scrívere.

*I told him to write.*

Mi è gráto **di** dírlo.

*I am happy to say so.*

Lêgge **per** divertírsi.

*He reads to amuse himself.*

È tróppo bássso **per** arrivárci.

*He's too short to reach it.*

Ho qualhecôsa **da** fáre.

*I have something to do.*

(c) *By* denoting the agent is **da**.

Fu fátto **da** lui.

*It was done by him.*

(d) *In* is **in**; but when expressing future time it is **fra**.

Fra tre giòrni sarà finíto.

*In three days it will be finished.*

(e) *For* is **per**: as **l' ha fátto per me**, *he has done it for me*. But, in the sense of *since*, in speaking of past time, *for* is **da**. *For* meaning *during* is omitted or translated **duránte**. Sentences like *it is right for him to do it* must be translated by **che** with the subjunctive: **è giústo che lo fáccia**.

Dimôra **da** mólti ánni a Firênze. *He has lived for many years at Florence* (see 73).

Resterò cinque settimáne.

*I shall stay for five weeks.*

Piòvve **duránte** un mése.

*It rained for a month.*

Bisógna **ch'** ío váda.

*It is necessary for me to go.*

(f) *From* is **da**; but before adverbs and sometimes after verbs of departing it is **di**. In speaking of time it is generally **fin da**.

Arríva **da** Parígi.

*He arrives from Paris.*

È lontáno **di** qua.

*It is far from here.*

Êsco **di** cása.

*I go out of the house.*

Fin **dal** princípio.

*From the beginning.*

(g) **Da** has, in addition to the meanings *by*, *from*, *since*, another sense hard to render in English: it may be translated *as*, *charac-*



teristic of, destined for, such as to, or suited to, according to the context. **Da** means also *at the house of* or *to the house of*. **Da** corresponds to English *on*, *at*, or *to* before the word *side*, *párte*, used in its literal sense.

Prométto <b>da</b> uômo d' onóre.	<i>I promise as a man of honor.</i>
Il Salvíni <b>da</b> Otèllo.	<i>Salvini as Othello.</i>
Saréste tánto buôno <b>da</b> veníre?	<i>Would you be so good as to come?</i>
Quésto è <b>da</b> sciôcchi.	<i>This is acting like a fool.</i>
Il bambíno ha un giudízio <b>da</b> gránde.	<i>The child has the judgment of a grown person.</i>
La sála <b>da</b> pránzo.	<i>The dining-room.</i>
Ūna tázza <b>da</b> caffè.	<i>A coffee-cup.</i>
L' ho vedúto <b>dal</b> Signór Néri.	<i>I saw him at Mr. Neri's.</i>
Viêne <b>da</b> me.	<i>He comes to my house.</i>
<b>Da</b> quésta pártē.	<i>On this side.</i>

(h) **A** is often used before a noun — not indicating material (which is expressed by **di**) nor purpose (expressed by **da**) — that describes another noun, when in English these two substantives would form a compound word.

Ūna máccina <b>a</b> vapóre.	<i>A steam-engine.</i>
Ūna sêdia <b>a</b> dóndolo.	<i>A rocking-chair.</i>
Ūno sgabèllo <b>a</b> tre pièdi.	<i>A three-legged stool.</i>

(i) **Êssere per** or **stáre per** means *to be about to*.

Stáva <b>per</b> parláre.	<i>He was on the point of speaking.</i>
---------------------------	---

(j) In some idiomatic phrases **di** is used in Italian when another preposition would be employed in English.

<b>Di</b> giòrno, <b>di</b> nótte.	<i>By day, by night.</i>
Êssere contênto <b>di</b> úna còsa.	<i>To be satisfied with a thing.</i>
Vívo <b>di</b> páne.	<i>I live on bread.</i>
Che facéva <b>dèlle</b> fôrbici?	<i>What did he do with the scissors?</i>

## ADVERBS

80. 1. Adverbs, unless they begin the clause, are generally placed immediately after the verb; **non**, however, always precedes the verb. When a compound tense is

used, the adverb nearly always follows the past participle, but **già**, **mái**, **più**, and **sêmpre** usually precede it. See also 84.

**Non** precedes a conjunctive and follows a disjunctive pronoun.

**Non** ci vado **mái**.

*I never go there.*

Ho parláto spésso.

*I have often spoken.*

**Non** ha sêmpre parláto **così**.

*He hasn't always talked so.*

Io **non** lo védo.

*I don't see him.*

2. Adverbs are compared like adjectives (see 31); but *better*, *worse*, *more*, *less* are respectively **mêglio**, **pêggio**, **più**, **méno**.

81. *Yes* is **sì** or **già**: **sì** when it expresses real affirmation, **già** when it denotes passive assent. *No* is **no**. *Not* is **non**, after which a word beginning with **s** impure generally prefixes **i**. *Or not* at the end of a clause is **o no**:

Le piáce? — **Sì**.

*Do you like it? — Yes.*

Che tempáccio! — **Già**.

*What nasty weather! — Yes.*

Sta bène? — **No**.

*Is he well? — No.*

**Non** istà bène.

*He isn't well.*

Sía véro **o no**.

*Whether it be true or not.*

(a) *What?* meaning *what do you say?* is **cóme?** **Che** and the interjection **o** are often used to introduce questions.

**O** perchè non rispondéte? —

*Why don't you answer? — What?*

**Cóme?** — **Che** siête sórdo,  
signóre?

— *Are you deaf, sir?*

(b) *Very* is **mólto** (see, however, 35, a). Instead of using a word or suffix for *very*, the Italians often repeat the emphasized adjective or adverb.

È **mólto** bello or è bellíssimo.

*It is very beautiful.*

I suòi genitóri érano **pôveri**  
**pôveri**.

*His parents were very poor.*

82. *Only* may be translated by the adverb **sólo**, **soltáto**, or **solaménte**; or by the adjective **sólo**. When it modifies

anything but a verb, it is often rendered by **non . . . che**, with the whole verb intervening, and with the word modified by *only* immediately after **che**.

**Non** ne ho compráto **che** dúe. *I have bought only two of them.*

**83.** *Never* is **non . . . mái**, with the inflected part of the verb intervening. *Just*, as an adverb of time, is **or óra**. *Early* is **prêsto, per têmpo, or di buôn' óra**. *This morning* is **stamáne**; *last night* is **stanôtte**. *The day after to-morrow* and *the day before yesterday* are respectively **domán l' áltro** and **iêr l' áltro**. *A week, a fortnight from to-day* are **ôggi a ôtto, a quíndici**. *Ago* is translated by **fa**, which follows the substantive of time; if this substantive is plural, *ago* may be rendered also by **sóno** (**êrano** or **saránno** if the date from which time is counted be past or future).

**Non** ti ha mái vedúto.

*He has never seen thee.*

Son arriváti **or óra**.

*They have just arrived.*

Tre ánni **fa**.

*Three years ago.*

Quáttro giòrni **sóno**.

*Four days ago.*

Lunedì **êrano** dúe settimáne.

*Two weeks ago Monday.*

Dománi **saránno** cinque mési.

*Five months ago to-morrow.*

**84.** *Here* and *there*, when they denote a place already mentioned, and no particular stress is laid upon them, are **ci** and **vi**, which are often used in Italian when they would be superfluous in English; *there is, there are*, etc., are **c' è** or **vi è**, **ci sóno** or **vi sóno**, etc. (sometimes **vi ha**). **Ci**, **vi**, and also **ne**, *thence*, occupy the same positions with regard to the verb, and undergo the same changes, as the pronouns **ci**, **vi**, **ne** (48, 50); they precede conjunctive pronouns beginning with **l** or **n**, and follow all others: **ce lo mánda, ti ci mándo**.

When emphasized, *here* is **qui** or **qua**, *there* indicating a place near the person addressed is **costì** or **costà**, and *there*

denoting a point remote from both speaker and hearer is **lì** or **là**.

Cárlo **vi** è tornáto.

Álla scuôla non **ci** vádo.

Vói rimarréte **costà**, égli  
resterà laggiù, ed ío non  
partirò di **qui**.

*Charles has gone back there.*

*I don't go to school.*

*You will remain where you are, he  
will stay down there, and I shall  
not move from here.*

(a) *Here I am, here it is, etc., are* **êccomi**, **êccolo**, etc.

**85.** Most adverbs of manner are formed by adding **-mênte** to the feminine singular of the corresponding adjective. Adjectives in **-le** and **-re** drop their final **e** in forming the adverb. See **35, a**.

**fránc**o, *frank*.

**felíce**, *happy*.

**piacévole**, *pleasant*.

**francamênte**, *frankly*.

**felicemênte**, *happily*.

**piacevolmênte**, *pleasantly*.

(a) *So meaning it is translated* **lo**:

**Lo** fáccio.

**Lo** créde.

**Lo** dícono.

*I do so.*

*He thinks so.*

*They say so.*

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**86.** *One, people, we, you, they*, used in an indefinite sense, are rendered in Italian by the reflexive construction with **si** (see **55**).

**Si** cánta bène in Itália.)

**Si** fa cosí.

**Se** ne párla.

**Si** fáanno spéss

*They sing well in Italy.*

*You do this way.*

*People speak of it.*

*One often does these things.*

**87.** *All* as a substantive is **tútto** (**tútti**, etc.):

Tacévano **tútti**.

*All were silent.*

The adjective *all, the whole* is **tútto** followed by the definite article.

**Tútta** la têrra.

*The whole earth.*

**Tútto** il giòrno.

*All day.*

**Tútte** le románe son bèle.

*All Roman ladies are beautiful.*

**88.** *Any*, when it really adds nothing to the sense, is omitted:

Non ha líbri.

*He hasn't (any) books.*

Voléte víno?

*Do you want (any) wine?*

When, however, this redundant *any* might be replaced by *any of the*, it is translated by the partitive construction (see **12, a**):

Voléte **del** víno?

*Do you want any (of the) wine?*

*Any* used substantively in the sense of *any of it, any of them* is **ne** (see **47, 3**):

Non **ne** ho.

*I haven't any.*

Non **ne** ha più.

*He hasn't any more.*

**Ne** avéte?

*Have you any?*

*Any* used adjectively and meaning *any whatsoever* is **qualúnque**:

Lo fa mêglio di **qualúnque**  
áltra persóna.

*He does it better than any other  
person.*

**89.** *Some*, when it adds nothing to the sense, is omitted or rendered by the partitive construction:

Voléte búrra or voléte **del**  
búrro?

*Will you have some butter?*

*Some* meaning *some of it, some of them* is **ne**:

**Ne** ha.

*He has some.*

Otherwise *some* is **alcúno** or **quálche**. **Quálche** is always singular (even when the meaning is plural), and is never used substantively.

**Alcúne** persóne or **quálche** persóna. *Some persons.*

**Alcúni** lo dícono. *Some say so.*

**90.** *Some . . . others, the one . . . the other, one . . . another* are translated by **chi . . . chi**, **áltri . . . áltri**, **l' úno . . . l' áltro**, or **alcúni . . . alcúni**.

**Alcúni** used in this way is always plural. A verb whose subject is **chi** or **áltri** (used in this sense) is always singular; **altri** is not used after prepositions. But **l' úno** and **l' áltro** can be used in any case or number.

**Tútti**, **chi** **più** **tôsto**, e **chi** **méno**, **morívano**. *All died, some sooner, some later.*

**Áltri** **cáde**, **áltri** **fúgge**. *Some fall, others flee.*

**Gli** **úni** **son** **buòni**, **gli** **áltri** **cattívi**. *Some are good, others bad.*

**91.** Following is a list of some other indefinite pronouns and adjectives:

*anybody*, **qualcúno**, **qualchedúno**,

**chicchessía**, pronouns.

*any more*, **più**, **ne . . . più**, pron.

*anything*, **qualchecôsa**, pron.

*anything else*, **áltro**, pron.

*both*, **tútti** e **dúe**, **l' úno** e **l' áltro**,

**ambedúe**, pron. or adj.

*certain*, **cêrto**, adj.

*each*, **ógni**, **ciascúno**, **ognúno**, adj.

*either*, **l' úno** o **l' áltro**, pron. or adj.

*every*, **ógni**, **ciascúno**, **ognúno**, **ciaschedúno**, adj.

*everybody*, **tútti** (pl.), **ciaschedúno**,

**ciascúno**, **ognúno**, pron.

*everything*, **tútto**, pron.

*few, a few*, **pôchi** (pl.), pron. or adj.

*however much (or many)*, **per quanto** (-ti), adj.

*little*, **pôco**, pron. or adj.

*less*, **méno**, pron. or adj.<sup>1</sup>

*many*, **mólto**, pron. or adj.<sup>2</sup>

*more*, **più**, pron. or adj.

*much*, **mólto**, pron. or adj.

*neither*, **non . . . l' úno** **nè** **l' áltro**, **nè** **l' úno** **nè** **l' áltro**, pron. or adj.

*no*, **non . . . nessúno**, **non . . . alcúno**, adj.

*nobody*, **non . . . nessúno**, pron.

<sup>1</sup> *Less*=smaller is **più** **piccolo**.

<sup>2</sup> *A great many* is **moltíssimi**.

*no more*, **non ne . . . più**, pron.,  
**non . . . più**, adj.  
*none*, **non ne . . .**, pron.  
*nothing*, **non . . . niênte**, **non . . .**  
**núlla**, pron.  
*nothing else*, **non . . . più niênte**,  
**non . . . più núlla**, pron.  
*others*, **altrúi** (see 91, d), pron.  
*several*, **parécchi** (fem. **parécchie**),  
 pron. or adj.

*somebody*, **qualchedúno**, **qualcúno**,  
 pron.  
*something*, **qualhecôsa**, pron.  
*something else*, **áltro**, pron.  
*such*, **tále**, adj.  
*such a*, **un tále**, adj. (but also pron.  
 in Ital., meaning *so-and-so*).  
*whatever*, **qualúnque** (invariable),  
 adj.

(a) The verb used with **nessúno**, **alcúno**, **niênte**, **núlla** (meaning *no*, *nobody*, *nothing*) must be preceded by **non**, *not*, unless this pronoun or adjective precedes the verb.

<b>Non</b> ho vísto <b>nessúno</b> .	<i>I have seen nobody.</i>
<b>Nessún</b> pòpolo lo possiêde.	<i>No people possesses it.</i>

(b) *Nothing*, followed by an adjective, is **niênte di**.

<b>Non</b> avête <b>niênte di</b> buôno.	<i>You have nothing good.</i>
--	-------------------------------

(c) **Ciascúno**, **ciaschedúno**, **ognúno**, **nessúno**, and **alcúno** when used adjectively are inflected like **úno** (see 14, 15).

(d) **Altrúi**, *another*, *others*, *our neighbor*, is invariable, and is not used as subject of a verb:

<b>Con altrúi</b> .	<i>With other people.</i>
<b>Chi áma altrúi áma</b> sè stéssu.	<i>He who loves his neighbor loves himself.</i>

The prepositions **di** and **a** are sometimes omitted before it:

<b>La móstro altrúi</b> .	<i>I point her out to others.</i>
<b>La vòglia altrúi</b> .	<i>The will of another.</i>

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Arranged according to Conjugation.<sup>1</sup>

**92.** This list contains no compound verbs except those which differ in conjugation from their simple verbs and those for which no simple verb exists in Italian. With every verb its irregular forms are given: in the same line with the infinitive are the present participle (if it be needed to show the original form of the infinitive), the first person singular of the past absolute indicative, the past participle, and the first person singular of the future indicative (if the future be contracted); immediately below are the present indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive, if these parts be peculiar. For **dâre** and **stâre** the whole past absolute and the first person singular of the past subjunctive are given also. **Êssere** is irregular throughout. *All tenses not mentioned are regular.* For peculiar endings, see **63, 68.** Note the following rules:

(a) If the *present participle* is given, the following forms, unless expressly mentioned, are to be constructed from its stem: all *past absolute forms with accented endings*, and the whole *past descriptive* and *past subjunctive*. E.g., **fâre**, pres. part. **facêndo**: hence past abs. 2d sing. and 1st and 2d pl., **facésti**, **facémmo**, **facéste**; past descr., **facéva**, etc.; past subj., **facéssi**, etc.

If the present participle is not given, these forms, unless they be mentioned, are to be constructed from the stem of the infinitive. E.g., **venîre**: past abs., **venísti**, **venímmo**, **veníste**; past descr., **veníva**; past subj., **veníssì**.

(b) A past absolute whose 1st pers. sing. ends in **-âi**, **-êi**, **-îi**, or **-êtti** (except **dêtti** and **stêtti**) is regular throughout. In any *other* past absolute the third person singular can be formed from the

<sup>1</sup> Reference to these tables is facilitated by an Alphabetical List of Irregular and Defective Verbs (see page 92). Students are advised not to learn forms in parentheses nor any verbs or forms marked *rare* or *poetical*.



first person by changing final **i** to **e**, and the third person plural by adding **-ro** to the third person singular. E.g., **fâre**, p. abs. féci: 3d sing., féce; 3d pl., fézero.

(c) If the future is not given, it is to be constructed from the infinitive. The past future always has the same stem as the future. See 65, p. 57.

(d) The imperative, when not given, is like the corresponding forms of the present indicative. See 66, b.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

### 1. **Andâre**, *go*, andái, andáto; andrò (anderò).

PRES. IND.		IMPER.	PRES. SUBJ.	
vâdo or vô	andiâmo	va'	vâda	andiâmo
vâi	andáte	andiâmo	vâda	andiâte
va	vânno	andáte	vâda	vâdano

### 2. **Fâre**, *do*, facêndo, féci,<sup>1</sup> fátto; farò. **Fâre** (*formerly also* **fâcere**) *was originally a verb of the third conjugation* (see 92, a).

PRES. IND.		IMPER.	PRES. SUBJ.	
fâccio or fô	facciâmo	fa'	fâccia	facciâmo
fâi <sup>2</sup>	fâte	facciâmo	fâccia	facciâte
fa <sup>2</sup>	fânno	fâte	fâccia	fâcciano

### 3. **Dâre**, *give*, diêdi or dêtti, dáto; darò. *Past subj.* déssi.

PRES. IND.	PAST. ABS.	IMPER.	PRES. SUBJ.
dô	diêdi or dêtti		día
dái	désti	da'	día
dâ	diêde or dêtte <sup>3</sup>		día
diâmo	démmo	diâmo	diâmo
dâte	déste	dâte	diâte
dânno	diêdero or dêttero <sup>3</sup>		díano or díeno

<sup>1</sup> In poetry we sometimes find a past abs. féi, fésti, fé or féo, fémmo, féste, férono or féro or fénno; and past descr. féa, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Also fâci fâce.

<sup>3</sup> Also diê, sing.; diêr or diêro or diêrono, pl.

4. *Stáre* (67, *a*), *stand*, *stètti*, *státo*; *starò*. *Past subj.* *stéssi*.

PRES. IND.	PAST. ABS.	IMPER.	PRES. SUBJ.
stô	stètti		stía
stái	stésti	sta'	stía
sta	stètte		stía
stiámo	stémmo	stiámo	stiámo
státe	stéste	státe	stiáte
stánno	stëttero		stíano or stíeno

## SECOND CONJUGATION

5. *Avére*, *have*, *èbbi*, *avúto*; *avrò*. See 53, *b*.<sup>1</sup>6. *Sapére*, *know*, *sèppi*, *sapúto*; *saprò*.

PRES. IND.	IMPER.	PRES. SUBJ.
sô sappiámo	sáppi	sáppia sappiámo
sái sapéte	sappiámo	sáppia sappiáte
sa sánno	sappiáte	sáppia sáppiano

7. *Cadére*, *fall*, *cáddi*, *cadúto*; *cadrò*.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
cádo (cággio) cadiámo (caggiámo)	cáda (cággia) cadiámo (caggiámo)
cádi cadéte	cáda (cággia) cadiáte (caggiáte)
cáde cádono (caggiono)	cáda (cággia) cádano (caggiano)

8. *Dovére*, *owe*, *dovéi* (*dovètti*), *dovúto*; *dovrò*. *Imperative lacking*.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
dêvo (débbo or dêggio)	dêbba (dêva or dêggia)
dêvi (dèbbi)	dêbba (dêva or dêggia)
dêve (dèbbe)	dêbba (dêva or dêggia)
dobbiámo (deggiámo)	dobbiámo
dovéte	dobbiáte
dêvono (dèbbono or dêggiono) <sup>2</sup>	dêbbano (dêvano or dêggiano)

9. *Sedére*, *sit*, *sedéi* or *sedètti*, *sedúto*.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
siêdo or sêggo sediámo (seggiámo)	siêda or sêgga sediámo (seggiámo)
siêdi sedéte	siêda or sêgga sediáte
siêde siêdono or sêggono	siêda or sêgga siêdano or sêggano

<sup>1</sup> In poetry we find: *ággio*, *ábbo*, or *áio* for *ho*; *áve* for *ha*; *ággia* or *áia* for *ábbia*; *êi* for *èbbi*; a future *arò*, etc., or *averò*, etc., and similar forms in the past future.

<sup>2</sup> Also *dêo*, *dêi*, *dêe*, *dovémo*, *dovéte*, *dêono* or *dênno*.

10. **Vedére**, *see*, vídi, vedúto or vísto; vedrò. **Provvedére** *has a future* provvederò; **prevedére** *has* prevederò or prevedrò. *All other compounds are like vedére.*

## PRES. IND.

védo (véggo or véggio)
védi
véde
vediámo (veggiámo)
vedéte
védono (véggono or véggiono)

## PRES. SUBJ.

véda (végga or véggia)
véda (végga or véggia)
véda (végga or véggia)
vediámo (veggiámo)
vediáte (veggiáte)
védano (véggano or véggiano)

11. **Giacére**, *lie*, giácqui, giaciúto.

## PRES. IND.

giáccio	giacciámo
giáci	giacéte
giáce	giácciono

## PRES. SUBJ.

giáccia	giacciámo
giáccia	giacciáte
giáccia	giácciano

12. **Piacére**, *please: like* giacére (11).

13. **Tacére**, *be silent: like* giacére (11).

14. **Solére**, *be wont, sôlito. No past. abs., fut., past fut., nor imperative.*

## PRES. IND.

sôglio	sogliámo
suôli	soléte
suôle	sôgliono

## PRES. SUBJ.

sôglia	sogliámo
sôglia	sogliáte
sôglia	sôgliano

15. **Dolére**, *grieve*, dôlsi, dolúto; dorrò.

## PRES. IND.

dôlgo (dôglio)	dogliámo <sup>1</sup>
duôli	doléte
duôle	dôlgono (dôgliono)

## PRES. SUBJ.

dôlga (dôglia)	dogliámo <sup>1</sup>
dôlga (dôglia)	dogliáte
dôlga (dôglia)	dôlgano (dôgliano)

16. **Rimanére**, *remain*, rimási, rimásto or rimásó; rimarrò.

## PRES. IND.

rimángo	rimaniámo <sup>2</sup>
rimáni	rimanéte
rimáne	rimángono

## PRES. SUBJ.

rimánga	rimaniámo <sup>2</sup>
rimánga	rimaniáte
rimánga	rimángano

<sup>1</sup> Also dolghiámo: a popular form.

<sup>2</sup> Also rimanghiámo: a popular form.

17. **Tenére**, *hold*, *ténni*, *tenúto*; *terrò*.

PRES. IND.

PRES. SUBJ.

têngo	teniâmo <sup>1</sup>	tênga	teniâmo <sup>1</sup>
tiêni	tenéte	tênga	teniâte
tiêne	têngono	tênga	têngano

18. **Valére**, *be worth*, *vâlsi*, ~~*valúto*~~ or *vâslo*; *varrò*.

PRES. IND.

PRES. SUBJ.

vâlgo ( <i>vâglio</i> )	vagliâmo	vâlga ( <i>vâglia</i> )	vagliâmo <sup>1</sup>
vâli	valéte	vâlga ( <i>vâglia</i> )	vagliâte
vâle	vâlgono ( <i>vâgliono</i> )	vâlga ( <i>vâglia</i> )	vâlgano ( <i>vâgliano</i> )

19. **Volére**, *wish*, *vôlli*,<sup>2</sup> *volúto*; *vorrà*.

PRES. IND.

IMPER.

PRES. SUBJ.

vôglio ( <i>vo'</i> )	vogliâmo	vôgli	vôglia	vogliâmo
vuôi <sup>3</sup>	voléte	vogliâmo	vôglia	vogliâte
vuôle	vôgliono	vogliâte	vôglia	vôgliano

20. **Parére**, *seem*, *pârvi*, ~~*parúto*~~ or *pârso*; *parrò*.

PRES. IND.

PRES. SUBJ.

pâio	paiâmo or pariâmo	pâia	paiâmo or pariâmo
pâri	paréte	pâia	paiâte
pâre	pâiono	pâia	pâiano

21. **Potére**, *be able*, *potéi*, *potúto*; *potrà*.<sup>4</sup> *No imperative.*

PRES. IND.

PRES. SUBJ.

pôssô	possîâmo	pôssa	possîâmo
puôi	potéte	pôssa	possîâte
può <sup>5</sup>	pôssono <sup>5</sup>	pôssa	pôssano

22. **Persuadére**, *persuade*, *persuâsi*, *persuâso*. *Pres. persuâdo*, etc.23. **Calére**, *matter*, *câlse*, *calúto*. *Impersonal. No fut., past fut., nor imperative. Not modern.*

PRES. IND.

PRES. SUBJ.

câle

câglia

<sup>1</sup> Also *tenghiâmo*; *valghiâmo*: popular forms.<sup>2</sup> Also *vôlsi*.<sup>3</sup> Also *vuôgli* or *vuôli*.<sup>4</sup> In poetry we find a fut. *porò* and a past fut. *poria*.<sup>5</sup> Also *puôte*; *pônno*.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

(e) All irregular verbs of the third conjugation are accented, in the singular and third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

(f) Verbs in **-cere** and **-gere** insert no **i** between the **c** or **g** and the **o** or **a** of the present indicative and subjunctive endings, except in the first person plural of both moods and the second person plural of the subjunctive. Cf. 60, last paragraph.

(g) See chapter on Pronunciation, 4, s, d.

## Present Regular

24. **Accêndere**, *light*, accési, accéso.
25. **Afflíggere**, *afflict*, afflíssi, afflítto.
26. **Álgere**, *be cold*, álsi. *Defective. Rare.*
27. **Allúdere**, *allude*, allúsi (alludói), allúso.
28. **Árdere**, *burn*, ársi, árso.
29. **Arrôgere**, *add*, arrôsi, arrôso or arrôto. *Defective. Rare.*
30. **Assídere**, *besiege*, assísi, assíso. *Rare.*
31. **Assôlvere**, *absolve*, assolvêtti or assolvéi or assôlsi, assôlto or assolúto. *So risôlvere (determine). For sôlvere, dissôlvere, and risôlvere (dissolve), see 107.*
32. **Assôrbere**, *absorb*, assôrsi (*not in use*), assôrto. *Rare.*
33. **Avêllere**, *uproot*, avúlse, avúlso. *Defective. Rare.*
34. **Chiúdere**, *shut*, chiúsi, chiúso. *So all verbs in -chiúdere or -clúdere. See, however, 4, s, d.*
35. **Côlere**, *revere*, cólto or cúlto. *Defective. Rare.*
36. **Connêtere**, *connect*, connêssi (connettéi), connêssso (connettúto). *Rare.*
37. **Conôscere**, *know*, conóbbi, conosciúto.
38. **Conquídere**, *conquer*, conquísi, conquíso. *Rare.*
39. **Consumere**, *consume*, consúnsi, consúnto. *Rare. Presúmere has also presuméi.*
40. **Contúndere**, *bruise*, contúsi, contúso.
41. **Córrere**, *run*, córsi, córso.
42. **Crêscere**, *grow*, crébbi, cresciúto.
43. **Cuôcere**, *cook*, cocêndo, còssi, còtto. *Pres. cuôcio or cuôco, etc.<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> In the 1st and 2d persons plural of the pres. ind., subj., and imperative, **uo** is generally replaced by **o**: cociámo, etc. The **uo** occurs in those parts of the verb where the accent falls on that syllable.

44. **Decidere**, *decide*, decísi, decíso.
45. **Difendere**, *defend*, difési (difendéi), diféso.
46. **Dirigere**, *direct*, dirèssi, dirètto.
47. **Discutere**, *discuss*, discússi (discutéi), discússo.
48. **Distinguere**, *distinguish*, distínsi, distínto.
49. **Dividere**, *divide*, divísi, divíso.
50. **Elidere**, *elide*, elísi (elidéi), elíso.
51. **Eludere**, *elude*, elúsi (eludéi or eludètti), elúso.
52. **Êrgere**, *erect*, êrsi, êrto. *Rare.*
53. **Esigere**, *exact*, esigéi (esigètti), esátto.
54. **Esistere**, *exist*, esistéi (esistètti), esistíto.
55. **Espèllere**, *expel*, espúlsi, espúlso. *Rare.*
56. **Esplodere**, *explode*, esplósi, esplóso.
57. **Esprimere**, *express*, esprèssi, esprèso. *So all other verbs in -primere. Prêmere and its compounds with ê are regular.*
58. **Fêndere**, *split*, fendéi (fendètti or fèssi), fendúto or fêso.
59. **Figgere** (**figere**), *fix*, físsi, fítto.
60. **Fingere**, *feign*, fínsi, fínto.
61. **Fondere**, *melt*, fúsi (fondéi), fúso (fondúto).
62. **Frangere**, *break*, fránsi, fránto.
63. **Friggere**, *fry*, fríssi, frítto.
64. **Genuflêtere**, *kneel*, genuflèssi, genuflêso. *Rare.*
65. **Intridere**, *dilute*, intrísi, intríso.
66. **Intrudere**, *intrude*, intrúsi, intrúso.
67. **Invadere**, *invade*, invási, inváso.
68. **Lêdere**, *offend*, lêsi (*not in use*), lêso. *Rare.*
69. **Lêggere**, *read*, lêssi, lêtto.
70. **Lícere** or **lécere**, *be lawful*, lécito or léito. *Impersonal. Defective. Poetical.*
71. **Lúdere**, *play*, lúsi, lúso. *Rare.*
72. **Mêrgere**, *plunge*, mêrsi, mêrso. *Rare.*
73. **Mêttere**, *put*, méssi or mísi, méssso.
74. **Môlcere**, *soothe*, múlse. *Defective. Rare.*
75. **Môrdere**, *bite*, môrsi, môrso.
76. **Muôvere**, *move*, movêndo, môssi, môssso.<sup>1</sup>
77. **Nâscere**, *be born*, nâcqui, náto.
78. **Nascôndere**, *hide*, nascósi, nascósto.
79. **Negligere** (*see 5, gli*), *neglect*, neglèssi, neglétto.
80. **Offêndere**, *offend*, offési, offéso.
81. **Ostêndere**, *show*. *Defective. Rare.*
82. **Percípere**, *perceive*, percétto. *Defective. Rare.*
83. **Pêrdere**, *lose*, perdéi or perdètti or pèrsi, perdúto or pèrso.
84. **Piôvere**, *rain*, piôvve (piovè), piovúto. *Impersonal.*

<sup>1</sup> See page 85, footnote.

85. Pôrgere, *present*, pôrsi, pôрто.
86. Predilîgere, *prefer*, predilêssi, predilêtto.
87. Prêndere, *take*, prési, présо.
88. Protêggere, *protect*, protêssi, protêtto.
89. Râdere, *shave*, râsi (radêi), râso.
90. Redîmere, *redeem*, redênsi (redimêi), redêntо.
91. Rêggere, *support*, rêssi, rêtto.
92. Rêndere, *render*, rêsi (rendêi or rendêtti), rêso (rendúto).
93. Rîdere, *laugh*, rîsi, rîso.
94. Riflêttere, *reflect*, riflêttêi or riflêssi, riflêttúto or riflêssо. Riflêtt-  
tere, *reflect light, is generally irregular; riflêttere, meditate, is*  
*usually regular.*
95. Rifûlgere, *shine*, rifûlsi. *Past part. lacking. Poetical.*
96. Rilúcere, *shine*, rilússi or rilucêi. *Past part. lacking.*
97. Rispôndere, *answer*, rispósi, rispósto.
98. Rôdere, *gnaw*, rôsi, rôso.
99. Rômpere, *break*, rúppi, rótto.
100. Scêndere, *descend*, scêsi, scêso.
101. Scîndere, *sever*, scîndêi or scîssi, scîssо.
102. Sciôlvere, *breakfast*, sciôlsi or sciolvêtti, sciôlto. *Rare.*
103. Scôrgere, *perceive*, scôrsi, scôрто.
104. Scrîvere, *write*, scrîssi, scrítto.
105. Scuôtere, *shake*, scotêndo, scôssi, scôssо.<sup>1</sup>
106. Soffôlcere, *support*, soffôlse, soffólto. *Defective. Rare.*
107. Sôlvere, *undo*, solvéi (solvêtti), solúto. *Poetical. So dissôl-  
vere; for assôlvere and risôlvere (determine), see 31.*
108. Sôrgere, *rise*, sôrsi, sôрто.
109. Sospêndere, *suspend*, sospêsi, sospêso. *So appêndere, impên-  
dere. Pêndere is reg.; dipêndere either reg. or irreg.*
110. Spândere, *spill*, spandêi or spandêtti, spántо.
111. Spârgere, *scatter*, spârsi, spârso or spârto.
112. Spêndere, *spend*, spêsi, spêso.
113. Spêrgere, *disperse*, spêrsi, spêrso. *Rare.*
114. Spôrgere, *project*, spôrsi, spôрто.
115. Strúggere, *melt*, strússi, strútto.
116. Succêdere, *happen*, succêssi or succedêi, succêssо or succedúto.  
*So concêdere, which has also concedêtti; cêdere and its other*  
*compounds are generally regular.*
117. Sûggere, *suck*, suggêi or sússi. *Past part. lacking. Rare.*
118. Têndere (*transitive*), *extend*, tési, téso. *The intrans. verb is reg.  
but has no past participle.*
119. Têrgere, *wipe*, têrsi or tergêi, têrso. *Rare.*
120. Tôrcere, *twist*, tôrsi, tôрто.

<sup>1</sup> See page 85, footnote.

121. **Uccidere**, *kill*, uccísi, uccíso.  
 122. **Víncere**, *conquer*, vínsi, vínto.  
 123. **Vívere**, *live*, víssi, vissúto *or* vivúto; viverò *or* vivrò.  
 124. **Vòlgere**, *turn*, vòlsi, vòlto.  
 125. **Vòlvere**, *turn*, vòlsi, vòlto. *Rare.* **Devòlvere** *has a past part.* devolúto.

### Present Irregular

126. **Êssere**, *be*, fúí, státo; sarò. See 53, a.<sup>1</sup>  
 127. **Bére** *or* **bévere**, *drink*, bevêndo, bévvi (bevêtti *or* bevéi), bevúto (beúto); berò *or* beberò.

#### PRES. IND.

bévo <i>or</i> béo	beviámo <i>or</i> beiámo
bévi <i>or</i> béi	bevéte <i>or</i> beéte
béve <i>or</i> bée	bévono <i>or</i> béono

#### PRES. SUBJ.

béva <i>or</i> béa	beviámo <i>or</i> beiámo
béva <i>or</i> béa	beviáte <i>or</i> beiáte
béva <i>or</i> béa	bévano <i>or</i> béano

128. **Chiêdere**, *ask*, chiêsi (chiési *or* chiedéi), chiêsto.

#### PRES. IND.

chiêdo (chiêggo) <sup>2</sup>
chiêdi
chiêde
chiediámo
chiedéte
chiêdono (chiêggono) <sup>2</sup>

#### PRES. SUBJ.

chiêda (chiêgga) <sup>2</sup>
chiêda (chiêgga)
chiêda (chiêgga)
chiediámo
chiediáte
chiêdano (chiêggano) <sup>2</sup>

129. **Condúrre**, *conduct*, conducêndo, condússi, condóttto; condurrò.

#### PRES. IND.

condúco	conduciámo
condúci	conducéte
condúce	condúcono

#### PRES. SUBJ.

condúca	conduciámo
condúca	conduciáte
condúca	condúcano

130. **Nuôcere**, *harm*, nocêndo, nôcqui, nociúto.

#### PRES. IND.

nuôco <i>or</i> nôccio	nociámo
nuôci	nocéte
nuôce	nuôcono <i>or</i> nôcciono

#### PRES. SUBJ.

nuôca <i>or</i> nôccia	nociámo
nuôca <i>or</i> nôccia	nociáte
nuôca <i>or</i> nôccia	nuôcano <i>or</i> nôcciano

<sup>1</sup> In the past descriptive *êramo* is often used for *eravámo*. We find in poetry: *sête* for *siête*; *ênno* or *en* for *sôno* (third pl.); *sîe* for *sîa*; *erámo*, *eráte* for *eravámo*, *eraváte*; *u* for *o* in the past absolute and past subjunctive; *fôro* for *fúrono*; *fîa*, *fîano* or *fieno* for *sarà*, *saránno*; *fôra*, *fórano* for *sarêi*, *sarêbbe*, *sarêbbero*; *sêndo* for *essêndo*; *súto*, *essúto*, or *issúto* for *státo*.

<sup>2</sup> Also *chiêggio*, *chiêggiono*, *chiêggia*, *chiêggiano*.



131. **Pórre**, *put*, *ponêdo*, *pósi*, *pósto*; *porrò*.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
póngo	poniámo (ponghiámo)	pónga	poniámo (ponghiámo)
póni	ponéte	pónga	poniáte
póne	póngono	pónga	póngano

132. **Trárre** (*tráere*), *drag*, *traêdo*, *trássi*, *trátto*; *trarrò*.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
trággo	traiámo or traggiámo <sup>1</sup>	trágga	traiámo or traggiámo <sup>1</sup>
trái (trággi)	traéte	trágga	traiáte
trâe (trágge)	trággono	trágga	trággano

133. **Vêllere** (*vêrre*), *tear up*, *vêlsi*, *vêlto*; *vellerò* (*verrò* or *velgerò*).  
*Vêllere, which is rare, has not all the forms given here; but its compound, svêllere, has them all.*

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
vêllo or vêlgo	velliámo (velgiámo)	vêlla or vêlga	velliámo (velgiámo)
vêlli (vêlgi)	velléte	vêlla or vêlga	velliáte (velgiáte)
vêlle (vêlge)	vêllono or vêlgono	vêlla or vêlga	vêllano or vêlgano

134. **Côgliere** (*côrre*), *gather*, *côlsi*, *côlto*; *coglierò* or *corrò*.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
côlgo (côglio)	cogliámo (colghiámo)	côlga (côglia)	cogliámo (colghiámo)
côgli	cogliéte	côlga (côglia)	cogliáte
côglie	côlgono (côgliono)	côlga (côglia)	côlgano (côgliano)

135. **Scégliere** (*scérre*), *choose: like* côgliere (134).136. **Sciôgliere** (*sciôrre*), *untie: like* côgliere (134).137. **Tôgliere** (*tôrre*), *take: like* côgliere (134).138. **Giúngere** (*giúgnere*), *to arrive*, *giúnsi*, *giúnto*; *giungerò* (*giugnerò*).

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
giúngo (giúgno)	giúnga (giúgna)
giúngi (giúgni)	giúnga (giúgna)
giúnge (giúgne)	giúnga (giúgna)
giungiámo (giugniámo)	giungiámo (giugniámo)
giungéte (giugnéte)	giungiáte (giugniáte)
giúngono (giúgnono)	giúngano (giúgnano)

139. **Cíngere** (*cígnere*), *gird: like* giúngere (138).140. **Múgnere** (*múngere*), *milk: like* giúngere (138).<sup>1</sup> Also *tragghiámo*.

141. **Piângere** (piâgnere), *weep: like giüngere* (138).  
 142. **Píngere** (pígnere), *paint: like giüngere* (138).  
 143. **Púngere** (púgnere), *prick: like giüngere* (138).  
 144. **Spêgnere** (spêngere), *extinguish: like giüngere* (138), *except that the forms with gn are far commoner than those with ng*.  
 145. **Spíngere** (spígnere), *push: like giüngere* (138).  
 146. **Stríngere** (strígnere), *bind: like giüngere* (138), *except that the past part. is strétto or strínto. Costríngere, compel, has for past part. only costrétto*.  
 147. **Tíngere** (tígnere), *dye: like giüngere* (138).  
 148. **Úngere** (úgnere), *anoint: like giüngere* (138).

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

### Present Regular

149. **Apríre**, *open*, apríi or apêrsi, apêrto. *Pres. ápro, etc.*  
 150. **Copríre** (cuopríre), *cover*, copríi or copêrsi, copêrto. *Pres. côpro (cuôpro), etc.*  
 151. **Offríre** (offeríre), *offer*, offríi (offeríi) or offêrsi, offêrto. *Pres. ôffro (offerisco), etc.*  
 152. **Soffríre**, *suffer: like offríre* (151).  
 153. **Convertíre**, *convert*, convertíi or convêrsi, convertíto or convêrso. *Pres. convêrto or convertísco, etc. All other verbs in -vertíre are reg.*  
 154. **Costruíre** (construíre), *construct*, co(n)strússi or co(n)struíi, co(n)struíto or co(n)strúttto. *Pres. co(n)struísco, etc.*  
 155. **Digeríre**, *digest*, digeríi, digeríto (digêsto). *Pres. digerísco, etc.*  
 156. **Esauríre**, *exhaust*, esauríi, esauríto or esáusto. *Pres. esaurísco, etc.*  
 157. **Sepellíre** or **sepellíre**, *bury*, sep(p)ellíi, seppellíto or sepólto. *Pres. sep(p)ellísco, etc.*

### Present Irregular

158. **Cucíre**, *sew*, cucíi, cucíto. *Pres. cúcio or cucísco. This verb inserts i before o and a, but not before e and i.*  
 159. **Sdrucíre** or **sdruscíre**, *rip: like cucíre* (158).  
 160. **Empíre** or **émpiere**, *fill*, empiêndo, empíi, empíto. *All but the present from the stem of empiere. So compíre or cômpiere, which has also a past part. compiúto.*

#### PRES. IND.

émpio (empísco)	empiámo
émpi (empísci)	empíte
émpie (empísce)	émpiono (empíscono)

#### PRES. SUBJ.

émpia	empiámo
émpia	empiáte
émpia	émpiano

161. **Moríre**, *die*, moríi, môrto; morrò or morirò.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
muôio (muôro)	moriâmo or muoiâ- mo	muôia (muôra)	moriâmo or muoi- âmo
muôri or muôi	moríte	muôia (muôra)	muoiâte
muôre	muôiono (muôro- no)	muôia (muôra)	muôiano (muôra- no) <sup>1</sup>

162. **Seguíre**, *follow*, seguíi, seguíto. *Pres. séguo, etc. The verb is generally regular; but the é may be changed to iê in all forms where it is accented. Proseguíre has -séguo or -seguísco.*

163. **Sparíre**, *disappear*, sparíi or spárvi, sparíto. *Pres. (regular) sparísco, etc. Apparíre has appárvi or -si or -fi, apparíto or appárso; comparíre has compárvi or -si or -fi, compárso; otherwise they are like sparíre, but they have in the present the additional forms: -páio, -páre, -páiono; -páia, -páiano.*

164. **Díre**, *say*, dicêdo, díssi, détto; dirò. *Díre (formerly dicere) belongs really to the third conjugation: dicésti, -éva, -éssi.*

PRES. IND.		IMPER.	PRES. SUBJ.	
díco	diciâmo	di'	díca	diciâmo
díci	díte	diciâmo	díca	diciâte
díce	dícono	díte	díca	dícano

165. **Salíre**, *ascend*, salíi or sálsi, salíto.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
sálgo (salísco)	saliâmo or sagliâmo <sup>2</sup>	sálga (salísca)	saliâmo or sagliâmo <sup>2</sup>
sáli (salís-ci)	salíte	sálga (salísca)	sagliâte
sále (salísce)	sálgono (salíscono)	sálga (salísca)	sálgano (salíscono)

166. **Veníre**, *come*, vénni, venúto; verrò.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
vêngo (vêgno)	veniâmo <sup>2</sup>	vênga (vêgna)	veniâmo <sup>2</sup>
viêni	veníte	vênga (vêgna)	veniâte
viêne	vêngono (vêgnono)	vênga (vêgna)	vêngano (vêgnano)

167. **Udíre**, *hear*, udíi, udíto; udirò (udrò).

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
ôdo	udiâmo	ôda	udiâmo
ôdi	udíte	ôda	udiâte
ôde	ôdono	ôda	ôdano

<sup>1</sup> In all forms where *uo* occurs, it may be replaced by *o*.

<sup>2</sup> Also *salghiâmo; venghiâmo*: popular forms.

168. **Uscire** (**escire**), *go out*, *uscii*, *uscito*.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	
<b>êscò</b>	<b>usciámo</b>	<b>êscà</b>	<b>usciámo</b>
<b>êsci</b>	<b>uscíte</b>	<b>êscà</b>	<b>usciáte</b>
<b>êsce</b>	<b>êscono</b>	<b>êscà</b>	<b>êscano</b>

169. **Oríre**, *be born*, **ôrto**. *Defective. Rare.*

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

**93.** Every irregular verb in this list is followed by a number referring to the table of Irregular Verbs arranged according to Conjugation. Obsolete defective verbs that present no irregularity have not been mentioned.

(a) Compound verbs have, in general, been excluded from this list, unless they differ in conjugation from the simple verbs from which they come (see **67**, a). The commonest prefixes are: **a-** (corresponding in meaning to the preposition **a**); **as-** (=Latin *abs-*); **co-**, **com-**, **con-**, **cor-** (=prep. **con**); **contra-** (=prep. **côntra**); **de-**, **di-** (=Lat. *de-*); **dis-** (=Lat. *dis-*); **e-**, **es-** (=Lat. *ex*); **i-**, **im-**, **in-**, **ir-** (=prep. **in**); **o-** (=Lat. *ob*); **per-** (=prep. **per**); **pre-** (=Lat. *prae-*); **pro-** (=Lat. *pro-*); **r-**, **re-**, **ri-** (=Lat. *re-*); **s-** (=Lat. *ex-* or *dis-*); **so-**, **sos-**, **su-** (=Lat. *sub*); **sopra-**, **sopr-**, **sor-** (=prep. **sôpra**); **sott-**, **sotto-** (=prep. **sôtto**); **stra-** (=Lat. *extra*); **tra-** (=prep. **tra**). After several of these prefixes the initial consonant of the simple verb is generally found doubled: **a+ca-dére**=**accadére**. **S-** is sometimes combined with **con-**, **r-** with **a-** or **in-**: **scoscéndere**, **raccôgliere**, **rincórrere**.

**Accadére**, *see* **cadére**, 7.

**Accéndere**, 24.

**Aclúdere**, *see* **chiúdere**, 34.

**Accôrgere**, *see* **scôrgere**, 103.

**Acquisíre** *has only* **acquisíto**.

**Addúrre**, *see* **condúrre**, 129.

**Afflíggere**, 25.

**Álgere**, 26.

**Allúdere**, 27.

**Ancídere**, *see* **uccídere**, 121.

**Andáre**, 1.

**Annêtttere**, *see* **connêtttere**, 36.

- Antepórre, *see* pórre, 131.  
 Antivedére, *p. p. only* antivedúto,  
*otherwise like* vedére, 10.  
 Apparíre, *see* sparíre, 163.  
 Appartenére, *see* tenére, 17.  
 Appêndere, *see* sospêndere, 109.  
 Apríre, 149.  
 Árdere, 28.  
 Arrôgere, 29.  
 Ascêdere, *see* scêndere, 100.  
 Ascíolvere, *see* sciolvere, 102.  
 Ascóndere, *see* nascóndere, 78.  
 Aspêrgere, *see* spêrgere, 113.  
 Assalíre, *see* salíre, 165.  
 Assídere, 30.  
 Assistere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Assolvere, 31.  
 Assôrbere, 32.  
 Assumere, *see* consumere, 39.  
 Avèllere, 33.  
 Avére, 5.  
 Bére, 127.  
 Bévere, *see* bére, 127.  
 Cadére, 7.  
 Calére, 23.  
 Cêdere, *generally reg., sometimes*  
*has p. abs. cêssi, p. p. cêssó.*  
 Chiêdere, 128.  
 Chiúdere, 34.  
 Cígnere, *see* cíngere, 139.  
 Cíngere, 139.  
 Circoncídere, *see* decídere, 44.  
 Cogliere, 134.  
 Coincídere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*  
 Cólere, 35.  
 Collúdere, *see* lúdere, 71.  
 Comparíre, *see* sparíre, 163.  
 Compêtere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*  
 Cómpiere, *see* empíre, 160.  
 Compíre, *see* empíre, 160.  
 Comprímere, *see* esprímere, 57.  
 Concêdere, *see* succêdere, 116.  
 Conclúdere, *see* chiúdere, 34.  
 Concútere, *see* discútere, 47.  
 Condúrre, 129.  
 Connêtttere, 36.  
 Conóscere, 37.  
 Conquídere, 38.  
 Consístere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Constáre *is reg.*  
 Construíre, *see* costruíre, 154.  
 Consumere, 39.  
 Contêndere, *see* têndere, 118.  
 Contrastáre *is reg.*  
 Controvêtere, *see* vêtere.  
 Contúndere, 40.  
 Convêrgere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*  
 Convertíre, 153.  
 Copríre, 150.  
 Córre, *see* cogliere, 134.  
 Córre, 41.  
 Corrispóndere, *see* rispóndere, 97.  
 Cospárgere, *see* spárgere, 111.  
 Cospêrgere, *see* spêrgere, 113.  
 Costruíre, 154.  
 Crêscere, 42.  
 Cucíre, 158.  
 Cuôcere, 43.  
 Cuopríre, *see* copríre, 150.  
 Dáre, 3.  
 Decídere, 44.  
 Dedúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.  
 Delínquere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.,*  
*and its p. abs., delinquêtti, is rare.*  
 Deprímere, *see* esprímere, 57.  
 Desístere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Devólvere, *see* vólvere, 125.  
 Difêndere, 45.  
 Digeríre, 155.  
 Dipêndere, *see* sospêndere, 109.  
 Díre, 164.  
 Dirígere, 46.  
 Dirímere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*  
 Discêndere, *see* scêndere, 100.  
 Discútere, 47.  
 Dispêrgere, *see* spêrgere, 113.  
 Dissolvere, *see* sôlvère, 107.  
 Dissuadére, *see* persuadére, 22.

Distáre, *reg. in pres. of all moods, no pres. p., otherwise like stáre*, 4.

Distínguere, 48.

Distrúggere, *see strúggere*, 115.

Divedére *has nothing but infin.*

Divêrgere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*

Dividere, 49.

Dolére, 15.

Dovére, 8.

Elêggere, *see lêggere*, 69.

Elídere, 50.

Elúdere, 51.

Êmpiere, *see empíre*, 160.

Empíre, 160.

Êrgere, 52.

Erígere, *see dirígere*, 46.

Esauríre, 156.

Escíre, *see uscíre*, 168.

Esclúdere, *see chiúdere*, 34.

Esígere, 53.

Esímere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*

Esístere, 54.

Espèllere, 55.

Esplódere, 56.

Esprímere, 57.

Êssere, 126.

Estínguere, *see distínguere*, 48.

Evádere, *see invádere*, 67.

Fáre, 2.

Fêndere, 58.

Fêrvere, *reg. verb, has no p. p., and is rare except in the third pers. of the pres. ind. and past descr.*

Fígere, *see fíggere*, 59.

Fíggere, 59.

Fíngere, 60.

Fóndere, 61.

Frángere, 62.

Fríggere, 63.

Genuflêttiere, 64.

Giacére, 11.

Gíre, *defect.: pres. giámo, gíte; past descr. gíva or gía, etc.; imper.*

giámo, gíte; *pres. subj. giámo, giáte; no pres. p.; rest reg.*

Giúgnere, *see giúngere*, 138.

Giúngere, 138.

Illúdere, *see lúdere*, 71.

Impèllere, *see espèllere*, 55.

Impêndere, *see sospêndere*, 109.

Imprímere, *see esprímere*, 57.

Incídere, *see decídere*, 44.

Inclúdere, *see chiúdere*, 34.

Incútere, *see discútere*, 47.

Indúrre, *see condúrre*, 129.

Insístere, *see esístere*, 54.

Instáre *is reg.*

Instruíre, *see costruúre*, 154.

Intêndere, *see têndere*, 118.

Intercêdere, *see succêdere*, 116.

Intrídere, 65.

Introdúrre, *see condúrre*, 129.

Intrúdere, 66.

Invádere, 67.

Invalére, *p. p. only inválso, otherwise like valére*, 18.

Îre, *defect.: pres. îte; p. des. íva, etc.; p. abs. ísti, íste, íro; fut. irémo, iréte, iránno; imper. îte; past subj. ísse, íste, íssero; p. p. íto.*

Istruíre, *see costruúre*, 154.

Lécere, *see lícere*, 70.

Lêdere, 68.

Lêggere, 69.

Lícere, 70.

Lúcere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*

Lúdere, 71.

Mantenére, *see tenére*, 17.

Mêrgere, 72.

Méttere, 73.

Môlcere, 74.

Môrdere, 75.

Moríre, 161.

Múgnere, 140.

Múngere, *see múgnere*, 140.

Muôvere, 76.

Náscere, 77.

- Nascóndere, 78.  
 Negligere, 79.  
 Nuocere, 130.  
 Offêndere, 80.  
 Offeríre, *see* offríre, 151.  
 Offríre, 151.  
 Opprímere, *see* esprímere, 57.  
 Oríre, 169.  
 Ostáre *is reg.*  
 Ostêndere, 81.  
 Parére, 20.  
 Percípere, 82.  
 Percuôtere, *see* scuôtere, 105.  
 Pêrdere, 83.  
 Permanére, *see* rimanére, 16.  
 Persistere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Persuadére, 22.  
 Piacére, 12.  
 Piágnere, *see* piángere, 141.  
 Piángere, 141.  
 Pígnere, *see* píngere, 142.  
 Píngere, 142.  
 Piôvere, 84.  
 Pôrgere, 85.  
 Pôrre, 131.  
 Pospôrre, *see* pôrre, 131.  
 Possedére, *see* sedére, 9.  
 Potére, 21.  
 Precídere, *see* decidere, 44.  
 Preclúdere, *see* chiúdere, 34.  
 Prediligere, 86.  
 Prêmere *is reg.*  
 Prêndere, 87.  
 Prestáre *is reg.*  
 Presúmere, *see* consúmere, 39.  
 Prevedére, *see* vedére, 10.  
 Prodúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.  
 Protêggere, 88.  
 Provvedére, *fut. and past fut. un-*  
*contracted, otherwise like vedére,*  
*10.*  
 Prúdere, *reg. verb, has no p. p., and*  
*is used only in the third pers.*  
 Púgnere, *see* púngere, 143.  
 Púngere, 143.  
 Raccôgliere, *see* cògliere, 134.  
 Rádere, 89.  
 Raggiúngere, *see* giúngere, 138.  
 Recídere, *see* decidere, 44.  
 Redímere, 90.  
 Règgere, 91.  
 Rêndere, 92.  
 Repêllere, *see* espêllere, 55.  
 Reprímere, *see* esprímere, 57.  
 Resistere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Restáre *is reg.*  
 Rídere, 93.  
 Ridúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.  
 Riflêttre, 94.  
 Rifúlgere, 95.  
 Rilúcere, 96.  
 Rimanére, 16.  
 Risôlvare (*dissolve*), *see* sôlvare,  
 107.  
 Risôlvare (*determine*), *see* assôl-  
 vere, 31.  
 Rispóndere, 97.  
 Ristáre, *see* stáre, 4.  
 Risúmere, *see* consúmere, 39.  
 Ródere, 98.  
 Rómpere, 99.  
 Salíre, 165.  
 Sapére, 6.  
 Scégliere, 135.  
 Scêndere, 100.  
 Scêrre, *see* scégliere, 135.  
 Scêndere, 101.  
 Sciôgliere, 136.  
 Sciôlvare, 102.  
 Sciôrre, *see* sciôgliere, 136.  
 Scommêttre, *see* mêttere, 73.  
 Scopríre, *see* copríre, 150.  
 Scôrgere, 103.  
 Scrívere, 104.  
 Scuôtere, 105.  
 Sdrucíre, 159.  
 Sdruscíre, *see* sdrucíre, 159.  
 Sedére, 9.

- Sedúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.  
 Seguíre, 162.  
 Sepellíre, *see* seppellíre, 157.  
 Seppellíre, 157.  
 Sofferíre, *see* soffríre, 152.  
 Soffólcere, 106.  
 Soffríre, 152.  
 Solére, 14.  
 Sólvere, 107.  
 Sopprímere, *see* esprimere, 57.  
 Soprastáre, *see* stáre, 4.  
 Sórgere, 108.  
 Sospêndere, 109.  
 Sostáre *is reg.*  
 Sottostáre, *see* stáre, 4.  
 Sovrastáre *see* stáre, 4.  
 Spándere, 110.  
 Spárgere, 111.  
 Sparíre, 163.  
 Spêgnere, 144.  
 Spêndere, 112.  
 Spêngere, *see* spêgnere, 144.  
 Spêrgere, 113.  
 Spígnere, *see* spíngere, 145.  
 Spíngere, 145.  
 Spôrgere, 114.  
 Stáre, 4.  
 Strídere, *reg. verb, has no p. p.*  
 Strígnere, *see* stríngere, 146.  
 Stríngere, 146.  
 Strúggere, 115.  
 Subíre *is reg.: pres. subísco.*  
 Succêdere, 116.  
 Súggere, 117.  
 Sussístere, *see* esístere, 54.  
 Svèllere, *see* vèllere, 133.  
 Tacére, 13.  
 Têndere (*trans.*), 118.  
 Têndere (*intrans.*), *reg. verb, has no p. p.*  
 Tenére, 17.  
 Têrgere, 119.  
 Tígnere, *see* tíngere, 147.  
 Tíngere, 147.  
 Tôgliere, 137.  
 Tôrcere, 120.  
 Tôrre, *see* tôgliere, 137.  
 Tradúrre, *see* condúrre, 129.  
 Tráere, *see* trárre, 132.  
 Transígere, *see* esígere, 53.  
 Trárre, 132.  
 Uccídere, 121.  
 Udíre, 167.  
 Úgnere, *see* úngere, 148.  
 Úngere, 148.  
 Uscíre, 168.  
 Valére, 18.  
 Vedére, 10.  
 Vèllere, 133.  
 Veníre, 166.  
 Vêrre, *see* vèllere, 133.  
 Vêrtere, *reg. verb, is used only in the pres. and past descr.*  
 Vilipêndere, *see* sospêndere, 109.  
 Víncere, 122.  
 Vívere, 123.  
 Volére, 19.  
 Vólgere, 124.  
 Vólvere, 125.



# LESSONS AND EXERCISES

## LESSON 1. PRONUNCIATION

*Study sections 1, 2, 3.*

NOTE. — In this and in all other lessons the assignment of a section number means that the *whole* section, including all subdivisions, is to be studied, unless special directions to the contrary are given.

### EXERCISE 1

1. *State the quality of the e (close or open) in each of these words, and pronounce each word:* te, tre, nè, sè, potè, è, dièdi, fièno, Sièna, désti, débito, Alfrédo, prèsto, mèrito, Valério.

2. *State the quality of the o in each of these words, and pronounce each word:* fo, no, canterò, però, muôre, suôna, nôi, ricóveri, Róma, bôve, ôpera, Môdena.

3. *Pronounce:* abitúdine, alfabêto, Alfîeri, altrúi, Amêrica, Am-lêto, andátevene, animáto, augurerái, balenío, benedírono, benêvolo, bibliôfilo, cavaliêre, colúi, conservatôrio, contadíno, Costantinôpoli, costúi, crêdulo, cúi, demoliréte, Demôstene, Doménico, dóve, éi, Emanuêl, erôe, esprimeréste, Faraóne, formidábile, fúi, Galilêo, Goldóni, idêa, impermalíto, impêro, insubordináto, ío, línea, Lombardía, lúi, lunedì, maêstro, miêi, mío, Nápoli, náufrago, nêutro, nobiltà, nuôra, ôde, oibò, onorévole, ortografía, Orviêto, ôvest, Panamà, Páolo, patáta, paúra, perdè, perpendícolo, personalità, pôi, pôvero, responsabilità, restituíti, rimaneváte, Rímini, Rómolo, Róvere, Seráo, Severíno, suôi, Taormína, úmile, úno, vendè, vói, volontà, vuôto.

## LESSON 2. PRONUNCIATION (continued)

*Study 4 [omitting (a), (b), (c), (d) under s], 5, 6, 7. Read (a), (b), (c) under s in 4, and 8.*

## EXERCISE 2

1. *Pronounce:* cáne, pánca, tásca, cóme, Páscoli, cúra, alcúni, scúdo, clásse, Têcla, crédo, sácro, ascrívere, che, chetáre, ôche, pánche, máscera, chi, chíno, báchi, párchì, bôschì, chiúdo, richiámo, manchiámo, schiávo, Íschia, Peschiêra, céna, celáre, vóce, viváce, Nocêra, élce, incêndio, ci, civíle, Cimabúe, dièci, táci, Lucía, Mêdici, pôrci, Púlci, Vínci, ciárla, diciannôve, óncia, márcia, ciêlo, spêcie, ciò, bácio, commêrcio, Píncio, ciúrma, fanciúllo, accêndere, uccêllo, accidênte, piccino, fáccia, bôccia, táccio, picción, Dúccio, acciúffo, ricciúto, scêna, násce, discêpolo, scíbile, lásci, disciplinái, sciáme, pôscia, lasciò, mesciúto.

2. *Pronounce:* gála, targa, sgarbáto, págo, válgo, sgómbro, gústò, auguráre, guárdia, Guído, sángue, glòria, anglomanía, mágro, sgri-dáre, ghétto, pagherò, álghè, sghémbo, ghirlánda, ghinêa, Ghibêrti, súghi, Inghiltêrra, ghiánda, ghióttò, paghiámo, Alighiêri, ringhiêra, geláre, gènere, Gênova, agévole, Eugênio, stringêdo, Angêlico, sgeláre, giro, agitáto, antología, Perugíno, piángi, cángia, Bôrgia, giòrno, giovedì, Giovánni, adágio, mángio, giù, giústò, Giúlio, digiúno, ingiúria, fríggere, piágge, ôggi, fuggíre, piággia, foggíare, leggiêro, maggióre, solféggio, Réggio, aggiúnta, raggiustáre, mágli, bégli, tígli, moglína, medágli, pigliáre, Cágliari, móglie, cogliêdo, táglío, lúglío, pagliúcola, figliuòlo, gli, pugnáre, Campáña, Bológna, spúgne, múgnere, compagnía, Mascágni, stágno, sógno, Folígno, ognúno, piagnucoláre.

3. *Pronounce the words in (a) under s on p. 3; then pronounce these words, in which the s has the sound of English z: basílico, bríndisi, cáso, cáusa, confusióne, desêrto, desináre, elemôsina, ênfasi.*

4. *Pronounce these words, in which the z (or zz) is pronounced like ts: grázie, ôzio, Venêzia, Abrúzzi, altézza, Arézzo, mázzo, pózzo, álzo, calzóni, ánzì, denúnzia, Firênze, Mónza, sênza, fôrza, márzo, zâmpa, zío, zólfo; then pronounce the words in (a) under z on p. 4.*

5. *Pronounce*: dèbbo, gabbàre, Lécco, pácco, addío, frédlo, affàre, gòffo, bèllo, Donatèllo, commèdia, sómma, fánno, Ravénna, appéna, trôppo, arrívo, tèrra, éssa, Messína, métto, ôtto, avveníre.

### LESSON 3. ARTICLES

*Study 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15.*

#### EXERCISE 3

1. *State the gender and number of each of these combinations, as indicated by the form of the definite article: gli ábiti, il balcóne, i bambíni, la bárba, le immáginì, gl' ímpeti, le scárpe, lo schérzo, gli zecchíni; cógli affári, del cámpo, súlla fáccia, ái ládri, dállo scóglio, négli státi, délle unióni.*

2. *Place the proper form of the definite article before each of these nouns [those in (a) are masculine singular, those in (b) masculine plural, those in (c) feminine singular, those in (d) feminine plural]:*  
 (a) álbero, dènte, fátto, impêro, sguárdo, spedále, uccèllo, zíngaro.  
 (b) álberi, dènti, fátti, impêri, sguárdi, spedáli, uccèlli, zíngari.  
 (c) ária, campána, evoluzióne, ménte, ómbra, scèna, zampa.  
 (d) árie, campáne, evoluzióni, ménti, ómbre, scène, zampe.

3. *Translate into Italian the prepositions and articles in these combinations [the nouns in (a) are masculine singular, those in (b) masculine plural, those in (c) feminine singular, those in (d) feminine plural]:* (a) *of the áнно, by the effètto, to the gátto, in the gèsto, with the ídolo, on the leóne, with the quádro, in the scúdo, to the spírito, by the umóre, of the zappatóre.* (b) *of the ánni, by the effètti, to the gátti, in the gèsti, with the ídoli, on the leóni, with the quádri, in the scúdi, to the spíriti, by the umóri, of the zapptóri.* (c) *of the ácqua, by the estáte, to the nòtte, in the ôpera, with the scála, on the távola.* (d) *of the ácque, by the estáti, to the nòtti, in the ôpere, with the scále, on the távole.*

4. *Place the proper form of the indefinite article before each of these nouns [those in (a) are masculine, those in (b) are feminine]:*  
 (a) idílio, nóme, ocêano, spécchio, strído, teátro, uôvo, zôccolo.  
 (b) età, maèstra, ónda, spína, úva, välle.

## LESSON 4. NOUNS

*Study 17-25 inclusive [omitting (a), (b) under 22, and (a), (b), (c), (d) under 23].*

## EXERCISE 4

1. *State the gender and number of each of these combinations:* gli animáli, néi caffè, la canzóne, cólla féde, del fucíle, gl' ingégni, i lúpi, dágli onóri, le paróle, il poêta, sülle questióni, lo schérzo, állo schiôppo.

2. *Give the plural of each of these nouns [those in (a) are masculine, those in (b) are feminine]:* (a) bríndisi, cáne, castêllo, dêspota, dolóre, líbro, lúme, maêstro, padróne, perícolo, podestà, probléma, uómo. (b) bellézza, bontà, capitále, fónte, lúna, móglie, orígine, pólvore, sêrie, síntesi, têrra, vittória.

3. *Give the plural of each of these combinations:* l' áqua, l' artístà (masculine), l' ánno, l' azióne (feminine), la barbárie, la béstia, il búe, il cavállo, la chiáve, il cuóre, la dáma, il dóno, l' erróre (m.), l' êstasi (f.), l' età, la fanciúlla, la felicità, la fêsta, il fráte, la gênte, il giurì, la gravità, l' idêa, l' inchiôstro, l' istánte (m.), il lavóro, la líra, la máno, il máre, la metrôpoli, il minístro, la morále, délla nazióne, all' oggêtto, nell' opinióne (f.), délla padróna, dal palázzo, súlla pêle, col prète, dal profêta, délla ragázza, al re, dal sánto, súllo scaffále, délla sête, nel sistêma, nêllo státo, súlla superfície, dell' umóre (m.), nêlla vâlle, sul vapóre, délla verità, cólla virtù.

## LESSON 5. ESSERE

*Study 53 (a) [omitting the compound tenses].*

## EXERCISE 5

1. *Identify (that is, state the person, number, and tense of) and translate these forms:* erano, saréte, fúmimo, siamo, essêdo, sarêbbe, sarémo, fu, sêi, sarêste, êra, státo, sarà, siête, saremmo, eravate, saránno, sónno, foste, sarêbbero, fúrono.

2. *Translate into Italian:* we<sup>1</sup> are, he will be, they were (*past descriptive*), they were (*past absolute*), I should be, she is, we were (*desc.*), they would be, I was (*abs.*), we shall be, we should be, being, it was (*abs.*), they will be, thou art, you are,<sup>2</sup> thou wast (*desc.*), you were (*desc.*), thou wast (*abs.*), you were (*abs.*), you will be, you would be, to be, been, let us be, be.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> English subject pronouns are to be omitted in translation, until other directions are given.

<sup>2</sup> English verbs which have 'you' as subject are to be translated by second person plural forms, until other directions are given.

<sup>3</sup> English imperatives without an expressed subject are to be translated by second person plural forms, until other directions are given.

## VOCABULARY

giornále, m., *newspaper*.

Giovánni, *John*.

libro, *book*.

pádre, m., *father*.

ragázzo, *boy*.

signóre, m., *gentleman*.

uómo, *man*.

cása, *house, home*.

città, *city*.

dôнна, *woman*.

Firênze, f., *Florence*.

mádre, f., *mother*.

María, *Mary*.

Nápoli, f., *Naples*.

pôrta, *door*.

ragázza, *girl*.

Róma, *Rome*.

scrivanía, *desk*.

signóra, *lady*.

távola, *table*.

a, *to, at, in*.<sup>1</sup>

dománi, *tomorrow*.

dóve, *where*.

già, *already*.

iêri, *yesterday*.

là, *there*.

ôggi, *today*.

óra, *now*.

quándo, *when*.

qui, *here*.

<sup>1</sup> English 'in' is ordinarily to be translated by *in*, but before the name of a city it is to be translated by *a*.

3. *Study these sentences:*<sup>1</sup> 1. Il signóre è il pádre di Giovánni. 2. Dóve siête óra? Sóno qui. 3. Quándo sarà cói signóri? 4. I líbri

<sup>1</sup> The student should enable himself to translate the sentences, to read them aloud in Italian accurately and intelligently, and to translate them without reference to the book when they are read aloud by the instructor.

déi ragázzì êrano súlla távola. 5. Dománi sarémo nélla città. 6. Sarà qui ôggi? 7. La dônna è già álla pôrta délla cása. 8. Óra è qui: dománi dóve sarà? 9. Il giornále è là, súlla scrivanía. 10. Iêri le signóre êrano a Nápoli, ôggi sóno a Róma, dománi saráno a Firênze.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. The lady is Mary's mother. 2. The girls will be here tomorrow. 3. The newspapers were on the tables. 4. Where are the boy's books? Are they on the desk? 5. I shall be there with the men. 6. Were you already at the door? 7. Would he be in the house now? 8. John's father is in the city. 9. When will you be in Naples? 10. Today they are here, tomorrow they'll be there.

<sup>1</sup> Use the past descriptive.

## LESSON 6. ADJECTIVES

*Study 26-34 inclusive. Learn the first twelve cardinal numerals, as given in 38.*

### EXERCISE 6

1. *Give the feminine singular and the masculine and feminine plural of each of these adjectives:* cattívo, fedéle, fôrte, rósso, sêmplice, véro.

2. *Insert the proper form of bello in each of these phrases:* il — álbero, il — cappêllo, il — fanciúllo, il — ingégno, il — státo; i — álberi, i — cappèlli, i — fanciúlli, i — ingégni, i — státi.

3. *Place the proper form of Santo before each of these names:* Agostíno, Cárlo, Êlmo, Giovánni, Lorênzó.

4. *Insert the proper form of grande in each of these phrases:* un — cappêllo, un — erróre, un — fuôco, un — ingégno, un — státo.

5. *Insert the proper form of buono in each of these phrases:* un — amíco, un — cuôre, un — fanciúllo, un — ingégno, un — schiôppo.

## VOCABULARY

cêntro, *centre*.fióre, m., *flower*.fratêllo, *brother*.giardíno, *garden*.têmpo, *time, weather*.chiêsa, *church*.lezióne, f., *lesson*.sorêlla, *sister*.stánza, *room*.vía, *street*.álto, *high, tall*.bêllo, *beautiful, pretty, handsome,*  
*fine*.fácile, *easy*.felíce, *happy*.francése, *French*.gentíle, *gentle, polite, kind*.gióvane, *young*.gránde, *great, large, big*.interessánte, *interesting*.italiáno, *Italian*.mólto, *much*; as adverb,  
*much, very*.píccolo, *little, small*.pôvero, *poor*.rósso, *red*.rotóndo, *round*.ci, *here, there*.<sup>1</sup>dópo, *after, afterward*.fórse, *perhaps*.non,<sup>2</sup> *not*.

<sup>1</sup> *Ci* is used when the 'here' or 'there' is quite unemphatic, *qui* and *là* when the 'here' or 'there' bears some emphasis. *Ci* is called a conjunctive adverb, and its position is governed by special rules. Until other directions are given, it should be placed directly before the verb.

<sup>2</sup> Placed before the verb.

6. Study these sentences:<sup>1</sup> 1. *Ci sôno déi bêi fióri nel píccolo giardíno.* 2. *Per i pôveri non è fácele êssere felíci.* 3. *La távola rotónda êra nel cêntro délla stánza.* 4. *C' è quálche giornále francése súlla scrivania.* 5. *Le víc di Nápoli sôno mólto interessánti.* 6. *Ôggi siête più felíce che iêri.* 7. *Le tre signóre francési êrano mólto gentíli.* 8. *La chiêsa è più álta délla cása.* 9. *Il ragázzo più gióvane è il fratêllo di Mariá.* 10. *Dománi fórse il têmpo sarà miglióre.*

<sup>1</sup> See the statement on p. 155.

7. Translate into Italian:<sup>1</sup> 1. The big red book is for John's brother. 2. He is the happiest of the boys. 3. The lesson for tomorrow will

<sup>1</sup> See the statement on p. 171.

be very easy. 4. The Italian newspaper was<sup>1</sup> on the round table. 5. The largest house is as high as the church. 6. Mary's four sisters will not be here after tomorrow. 7. The boys were<sup>1</sup> more polite when they were younger. 8. Yesterday the weather was fine. 9. The prettiest flowers are in the garden. 10. There are some interesting streets in the centre of the city.<sup>2</sup>

*interessanti nel centro della città*  
 1 Use the past descriptive.

*ci sono delle vie*

<sup>2</sup> Write this sentence in two ways, first using the partitive construction, then using *qualche*.

## LESSON 7. AVÈRE

Study 53 (b) [omitting the compound tenses].

### EXERCISE 7

1. *Identify and translate:* avêste, hânno, avréste, avrémo, êbbi, avévi, avêndo, avrà, avúto, avrêbbero, avévano, avréte, abbiámo, êbbero, hái, avránno.

2. *Translate into Italian:* they will have, she had (*past abs.*), we should have, I had (*past desc.*), having, we have, thou wilt have, they have, let us have, you will have, we had (*abs.*), I should have.

3. *Translate:* fúrono, ha, fôste, aveváte, sarà, avéte, essêndo, êbbe, siáte, avrémmo, sarêi, avémmo, saréste, avéva.

4. *Translate into Italian:* I am, I have, you are, you have, he is, he has, we were (*desc.*), we had (*desc.*), they were (*desc.*), they had (*desc.*), I was (*abs.*), I had (*abs.*), you were (*abs.*), you had (*abs.*), he was (*abs.*), he had (*abs.*), we shall be, we shall have, they would be, they would have.

### VOCABULARY

álbero, *tree.*

ánnno, *year.*

giórno, *day.*

invêrno, *winter.*

mése, m., *month.*

pránzo, *dinner.*

quádro, *picture.*

salôtto, *parlor.*

sóle, m., *sun, sunlight.*

teátro, *theatre.*



matita, *pencil*.  
 paziênza, *patience*.  
 pénna, *pen*.  
 rôsa, *rose*.  
 settimána, *week*.  
 stôria, *history*.

cáldo, *hot, warm*.  
 fréddo, *cold*.  
 importánte, *important*.  
 nuôvo, *new*.  
 piêno, *full*.

scúro, *dark*.  
 strétto, *narrow*.  
 véro, *true*.

benchè, *although*.<sup>1</sup>  
 e, *and*.  
 ma, *but*.  
 o, *or*.  
 pôi, *then*.  
 prêsto, *soon, early*.  
 sêmpre, *always*.  
 soltáto, *only*.

<sup>1</sup> The verb of the clause introduced by *benchè* is always in the subjunctive.

5. *Study these sentences:* 1. Avránno soltáto tre o quáttro giòrni a Firênze. 2. La chiêsa più interessánte êra in úna vía strétta e scúra. 3. Il giòvane avêva sêmpre quálche líbro italiáno súlla scrivaníá. 4. Benchè le stánze non síano grándi, sóno cáldo e piêne di sóle. 5. Abbiámo per dománi dèlle lezióni móltro fáci. 6. Non ho úna pénna, ma Giovánni ha dèlle matíte. 7. Dópo pránzo le signóre sarêbbero nel salótto. 8. Pôi avrà dèlle távole nuôve. 9. Il líbro è úna stôria importánte déi teátri di Nápoli. 10. Ôggi avrò déi giornáli francési e italiáni.

*molto più alte*

6. *Translate into Italian:* 1. The trees are much higher than the houses. 2. A year has twelve months, a month has four weeks, and a week has seven days. 3. They have a large house with a beautiful garden. 4. Have patience, they will be here soon. 5. Although the room is small, it will not be cold in the winter. 6. The most beautiful flowers were large red roses. 7. He had ten books on the desk, and seven or eight on the round table. 8. Have you a pen or a good pencil? 9. It is a pretty theatre, it's true, but it isn't very large. 10. The churches of the city were very beautiful; they had many interesting pictures.

## LESSON 8. DEMONSTRATIVES AND INTERROGATIVES

Study 42, 43.

## EXERCISE 8

1. Place the proper form of *quéllo* before each of these nouns: *álbero*, *cappêllo*, *fanciúllo*, *ingégno*, *státo*, *uccêllo*; *álberi*, *cappêlli*, *fanciúlli*, *ingégni*, *státi*, *uccêlli*.

2. Translate into Italian: who is it? whom have you there? of whom are-you-speaking (*parláte*)? what is it? what have you? of what are you speaking? what book is that? which book is that? whose book is that? what a beautiful book!

## VOCABULARY

*bigliétto*, ticket.

*cappêllo*, hat.

*denáro*, money.

*fanciúllo*, child.

*lavóro*, work.

*número*, number.

*occhiáli*, m. pl., glasses.

*studênte*, m., student.

*fôglia*, leaf.

*gíta*, trip, excursion.

*máno*, f., hand.

*mattína*, morning.

*Miláno*, f.,<sup>1</sup> Milan.

*poesía*, poem, poetry.

*Venêzia*, Venice.

*cêrto*, certain.

*córto*, short.

*diffícile*, difficult.

*fortunáto*, fortunate.

*necessário*, necessary.

*ógni*,<sup>2</sup> every.

*possíbile*, possible.

*prónto*, ready.

*vérde*, green.

*cóme*, as, like.

*finalménte*, finally, at last.

*lunedì*, Monday.

*se*, if.<sup>3</sup>

*sì*, yes.

*trôppo*, too, too much.

<sup>1</sup> Names of cities are regarded as feminine, whatever the ending.

<sup>2</sup> Invariable.

<sup>3</sup> The verb of the clause introduced by *se* is present *indicative* if the tense is present, past *subjunctive* if the tense is past.

3. Study these sentences: 1. *Quêste fôglie sóno più bèle di quéi fíori.* 2. *Ho dêi giornáli e dêi líbri: quésti sóno per le signóre, quélli*

per i signóri. 3. Ciò è possíbile, ma non è cêrto. 4. Chi ha un pádre cóme quéllo è móltto fortunáto. 5. Chi è? È quéllo studênte fran-cése. 6. Che còsa avéte in quél-la máno? Déi bigliétti per una gíta a Venêzia. 7. Quále è il número délla cása di quel signóre? 8. Quále lezióne éra la più diffícile? 9. Quánti quádri in quel salótto! 10. Di chi è quel cappéllo vérde?

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. What handsome children! Who are they? 2. Those poems are shorter than this one. 3. How much money would he have then? 4. At last he has what is necessary for the work. 5. These boys are here every morning. 6. Are you ready? Have you those tickets? 7. Which churches are more interesting, those of Venice or those of Milan? 8. That red is pretty. Yes, if it isn't too dark for the room. 9. How many will be here Monday? More than ten or twelve? 10. Whose glasses are these? Are they John's?

## LESSON 9. THE FIRST CONJUGATION

*Study 58, 59 [omitting (a), (b)], 62, 63 [omitting (a)-(d)], the first sentence of 75, and the first sentence of 77 (a).*

### EXERCISE 9

1. *Identify and translate:* parlò, parleréte, párli, parláste, parláte, parliámo, parlerêi, parlerái, párlino, parlerà, parlái, parlávano.

2. *Translate into Italian:* I spoke, she would speak, we were speaking, I shall speak, they spoke, speak, let us speak, let him speak, speaking, they speak, we should speak, he spoke.

### VOCABULARY

baúle, m., *trunk*.

esáme, m., *examination*.

forestiére, m., *foreigner*.

guánto, *glove*.

moménto, *moment*.

palázzo, *palace*.

páne, m., *bread*.

paniére, m., *basket*.

poêta, m., *poet*.

chiáve, f., *key*.

gallería, *gallery*.

stazióne, f., *station*.

università, *university*.

amâre, *to love.*

aspettâre, *to wait, wait for.*

cantâre, *to sing.*

comprâre, *to buy.*

costâre, *to cost.*

desiderâre, *to desire.*

entrâre, *to enter, go in, come in.*

guardâre, *to look, look at, watch.*

lavorâre, *to work.*

passâre, *to pass.*

telefonâre, *to telephone.*

tornâre, *to come back, return.*

trovâre, *to find.*

visitâre, *to visit.*

3. *Translate:* compriâmo, costerêbbe, entrâva, tornerà, desiderâte, trovâste, entreranno, amerêbbero, tórni, trovâto, trovâti, comprâmmo, guâda, guardâi, amârono, trovândo, telefonò, lavorerêste, aspêttano, cântino.

4. *Translate into Italian:* it will cost, I waited, buying, they would watch, she came in, they returned, I should telephone, he loved, sing, we found, let him work.

5. *Study these sentences:* 1. Comprerò un baúle, se non còsta trôppo. 2. Quândo ci entrâmmo, guardâvano quel bêl quâdro dégli álberi. 3. Quânto còstano quèsti guânti? 4. Se non lavorâsse, non passerêbbe gli esâmi. 5. Parlâva dèlle poesie di quel poêta francése. 6. Lunedì visitâmmo l'università di Nápoli. 7. Che còsa cantâvano quèi ragâzzi nêlla vía? 8. Aspêtti un moménto: non sòno prònto. 9. Non entrò nel palâzzo, benchè avésse le chiâvi. 10. Chi più ha, più desídera.

6. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Look at<sup>1</sup> that girl with the basket full of roses. 2. They were waiting for that foreigner. 3. You will find some<sup>2</sup> interesting pictures in that gallery. 4. Did you telephone to that French gentleman? 5. With whom did you come back from the station? 6. I went in, although he was working. 7. Let's wait for<sup>1</sup> John: he will be here soon. 8. Let him buy the bread, and then come back. 9. Where did she find those keys? 10. If I find the money, I'll telephone.

<sup>1</sup> Do not use a preposition after an Italian verb which may be in itself equivalent to an English verb and preposition.

<sup>2</sup> Use *quálche*.

## LESSON 10. RELATIVES AND POSSESSIVES

*Study 44 [omitting (a), (b), (c)], 45 [omitting (a)–(c)], 59 (a). Read 44 (a), (b), (c) 59 (b), 63 (a), (b), (c).*

## EXERCISE 10

1. *Insert the proper relative pronoun in each of these phrases:* il ragázso — è qui, i líbri — trovái, i ragázzi con — tornái, il líbro di — párló, i líbri — sóno súlla távola, il ragázso — cercavámo.

2. *Translate into Italian:* my garden, his house, our books, your pencils, their garden, my house, her books, our pencils, your garden, their house, my books, his pencils, our garden, your house, their books.

## VOCABULARY

cugíno, *cousin.*

mercáto, *market.*

ombrèllo, *umbrella.*

pittóre, m., *painter.*

románzo, *novel.*

finêstra, *window.*

fotografía, *photograph.*

méla, *apple.*

péra, *pear.*

têsta, *head.*

giállo, *yellow.*

modêrno, *modern.*

tútto, *all.*

último, *last, latest.*

arriváre, *to arrive.*

bisognáre,<sup>1</sup> *to be necessary.*

cercáre, *to seek, search, look for, try.*

cominciáre, *to begin.*

mangiáre, *to eat.*

menáre, *to lead, take.*

pagáre, *to pay.*

portáre, *to carry, bring.*

studiáre, *to study.*

bêne, *well.*

êcco, *here is, here are, there is, there are.<sup>2</sup>*

perchè, *why, because.*

stamáne, *this morning.*

súbito, *at once.*

<sup>1</sup> Impersonal.

<sup>2</sup> When 'there is,' 'there are,' are quite unemphatic (as in 'There are some pretty flowers in the garden'), or when the 'is' or 'are' is emphatic (as in 'There are men who don't believe it'), they are to be translated by *c'è* or *ci sono*. When the 'there' is emphatic (as in 'There is John') they are to be translated by *êcco*. 'Here is,' 'here are,' are always to be translated by *êcco*. *C'è* and *ci sono* correspond to the French *il y a*; *êcco* to the French *voici* and *voilà*.

3. Give all the forms of *pagare* in which an *h* is inserted.

4. Translate into Italian: I search, we search, let him search, I shall search; I pay, we pay, let him pay, I shall pay; I begin, we begin, let him begin, I shall begin; I eat, we eat, let him eat, I shall eat; I study, we study, let him study, I shall study.

5. Study these sentences: 1. È un uòmo che tróva súbito quel che cerca. 2. C' êrano all' última finêstra dúe signóri, úno déi quáli <sup>abitano visit</sup> ~~visitammo~~ <sup>abitano</sup> era quel forestiêre con cúì parlái iêri. 3. Il palázzo che ~~visitammo~~ <sup>abitano</sup> stamáne è úno déi più interessánti délla città. 4. La lóro sorêlla portáva súlla têsta un gran paniêre giállo piêno di méle e di pére. 5. Mangerémo quel che troverémo, e pagherémo bêne. 6. Il quádro che guardávano nel salôtto è di úno déi nôstri miglióri pittóri italiáni modérni. 7. Êcco quel signóre. Perchè desidêra parláre ái vòstri fratèlli? 8. Che bêi fióri! Sóno tútti del vòstro giardíno? 9. La vía più strétta è quèlla che ména dálla chiêsa di San Giovánni al mercáto. 10. Bisognáva aspettáre María, che cercáva l' ombrêllo.

6. Translate into Italian: 1. Who is the tall gentleman who arrived this morning? 2. Which of the lessons that you studied yesterday is the easiest? 3. This novel is more interesting than the one that he brought from the city. 4. My glasses are larger and rounder than his. 5. What are you looking for? Those tickets that I bought this morning. 6. Here is the umbrella I found at the door the day that you were here. Is it yours? 7. Whose is that poem of which they were speaking? 8. There are the men they were waiting for: why don't they begin? 9. Which of those three trunks is yours? This one, the largest. 10. Here is what he brought, — what is it? It's the latest photograph of my cousin.

## LESSON 11. THE SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS

Study 60.

### EXERCISE 11

1. Identify and translate: credè, crederéte, créda, crederò, credéste, credéte, credètti, crediámo, crederêi, credêttero, crederái, credéi, crederà, credévano, crederémo.

2. *Translate into Italian:* I believed, she would believe, we were believing, believe, they believed, let us believe, let him believe, believing, they believe, we should believe, he believed, you believe.

## VOCABULARY

bottóne, m., *button*.

caffè, m., *coffee*.

fêrro, *iron*.

lúme, m., *light*.

onóre, m., *honor*.

servitóre, m., *servant*.

battáglia, *battle*.

côsa, *thing*.

fráse, f., *sentence*.

preghiêra, *prayer, entreaty*.

salúte, f., *health*.

tórre, f., *tower*.

vílla, *villa*.

vísta, *sight, view*.

víta, *life*.

vólta, *time*.<sup>1</sup>

godére, *to enjoy*.

temére, *to fear, be afraid*.

báttere, *to beat, strike*.

cêdere, *to yield*.

combáttere, *to fight*.

crêdere, *to believe, think*.

pêrdere, *to lose*.

prêmere, *to press*.

ricêvere, *to receive, get*.

ripêtere, *to repeat*.

ancóra, *yet, still, again, even*.

che, *conjunction, that*.

fuorchè, *except*.

mêglio, *better*.

mêntre, *while*.

<sup>1</sup> 'Time' is ordinarily to be translated by *têmpo*; but when it has the sense of 'occasion' (as in 'three or four times') it is to be translated by *vólta*.

3. *Translate:* battiámo, teméva, perderà, godéte, ricevéi, cedêtero, combattè, premêndo, ripêta, cederêbbe, ricevéste, goderánno, perderêbbero, témano, perdúto, perdúti, temémmo, combátte, perdérono, ricévono.

4. *Translate into Italian:* he will lose, I enjoyed, fearing, they would beat, she received, let them yield, they fought, repeat, they are pressing.

5. *Study these sentences:* 1. Oggi è felice: riceverà il denáro per quel quádro délla signóra cói guánti. 2. Benchè combattéssero bène, perdêtero la battáglia, e mólti perdêtero la víta. 3. Avrémo quel che bisógna, non teméte. 4. Non ho ricevúto ancóra le mie fotografie.

5. Ripetévano ancóra quel che avévano già ripetúto mólte vólte. 6. Non ho studiáto la lezióne: ièri perdéi i mièi líbri. 7. Se non tornásse, perderèbbe ógni còsa. 8. Credéva che fósse mèglio èssere temúto che amáto. 9. Tútto è perdúto fuorchè l' onóre. 10. Bisógna báttère il fèrro méntre è cáldo.

6. *Translate into Italian:* 1. She pressed a button, and the servant came in with the coffee. 2. The students had to (a) repeat the sentence three or four times. 3. The trees were losing the last red and yellow leaves. 4. If I receive the money, I'll telephone at once to my father. 5. Finally she came back and repeated that *ária* from the *Trovatóre* (m.). 6. Although she is still young, she does not enjoy good health. 7. That room has only one small window, but it gets light from the parlor. 8. From their villa they enjoy a beautiful view of the towers of the city. 9. If he doesn't yield to their entreaties, he won't yield to mine. 10. They think that he is<sup>1</sup> even poorer than his cousin.

<sup>1</sup> Use the subjunctive.

## LESSON 12. CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

*Study 46, 47 [omitting 3 and (a)], 48 [omitting (a), (b), (d), (e), and (f), but including (c)].*

### EXERCISE 12

1. *Translate into Italian:* he finds me, he finds thee, he finds him, he finds her, he finds it (m.), he finds it (f.), he finds us, he finds you, he finds them (m.), he finds them (f.); I find myself, thou findest thyself, he finds himself, she finds herself, we find ourselves, you find yourself, you find yourselves, they (m.) find themselves, they (f.) find themselves; we find each other, you find each other, they find each other; to find him, finding him, let us find him, find him, do not find him, finding himself.

2. *Translate into Italian:* he speaks to me, he speaks to thee, he speaks to him, he speaks to her, he speaks to us, he speaks to you, he speaks to them (m.), he speaks to them (f.); I speak to myself, thou



speakest to thyself, he speaks to himself, she speaks to herself, we speak to ourselves, you speak to yourself, you speak to yourselves, they (*m.*) speak to themselves, they (*f.*) speak to themselves; we speak to each other, you speak to each other, they speak to each other; to speak to him, speaking to him, let us speak to him, let's not speak to him, speak to him, speaking to himself.

3. *Translate:* lo trovái, le párlano, mi parlerébbe, ripetételo, vi aspettávano, li compráste?, cediámo lóro, la guardávano?, gli telefonerò, si trovò, lo perdémmo, cercátela, le ricevérono, lo perdétte, trovárvi, ci visiteránno, ci visiterémo, temêndoli, non le parláte, ci cêda, vi telefonò, studiámolo, si cêcano, comprátolo, li portáte.

4. *Study these sentences:* 1. Se non mi trováte qui, aspettátemi cói bigliétti álla pòrta délla stazióne. 2. Che còsa cêrca? Le chiávi di quel baúle. Le trovò iêri, pòi le perdétte ancóra. 3. Si ripetévano le frási délla lezióne. 4. Che ragázzo! Compráre cínque méle, e mangiárle súbito! 5. Quánto gli costerébbe un cappéllo cóme quéllo? 6. Parláva cóme se ci fósse státo. 7. Quándo riceverò il denáro, vi pagherò. 8. Di che còsa le parláva nel salòtto? 9. Dóve ci ména? Álla chiêsa di cúì vi parlò quel pittóre. 10. Êcco quell' ombrêllo: teméva che lo avésse perdúto.

5. *Translate into Italian:* 1. When he came back from the market, he brought me some<sup>1</sup> apples. 2. When will she begin to (*a*) sing to them? 3. If you study the lesson, you will find it easy. 4. If he had them, he would bring them to my father. 5. When they came in, he was beginning to (*a*) eat it. 6. Here are the books I lost yesterday. Who found them? 7. We were here this morning, but she did not receive us. 8. I waited for them three days in Naples. 9. Now that you have it again, don't lose it. 10. Whose photograph is this? It's of my cousin. I received it yesterday.

<sup>1</sup> Use the partitive construction.

## LESSON 13. CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS (continued)

Study 46-50 inclusive.

## EXERCISE 13

1. Translate each of these phrases in two ways: gliélo pôto, gliéla pôto, gliéli pôto, gliéle pôto, gliéne páro, portáteglielo, parlátegliene.

2. Translate into Italian: *you to him* he leads him to me, he leads him to thee, he leads him to him, he leads him to her, he leads him to us, he leads him to you, he leads him to them; *you to her* he leads her to me, he leads her to thee, he leads her to him, he leads her to her, he leads her to us, he leads her to you, he leads her to them; he leads them (*m.*) to me, he leads them to thee, he leads them to him, he leads them to her, he leads them to us, he leads them to you, he leads them to them; he leads them (*f.*) to me, he leads them to thee, he leads them to him, he leads them to her, he leads them to us, he leads them to you, he leads them to them.

3. Translate into Italian: *you to me* he speaks of it to me, he speaks of it to thee, *you to him* he speaks of it to him, *you to her* he speaks of it to her, *you to us* he speaks of it to us, *you to you* he speaks of it to you, *you to them* he speaks of it to them.

4. Translate into Italian: I repeat it to myself, thou repeatest it to thyself, he repeats it to himself, she repeats it to herself, we repeat it to ourselves, you repeat it to yourself, you repeat it to yourselves, they repeat it to themselves; we repeat it to each other, you repeat it to each other, they repeat it to each other.

## VOCABULARY

automobile, *m., automobile.*  
compliménto, *compliment.*  
ritárdo, *delay; in ritárdo, late.*  
trêno, *train.*

nôtte, *f., night.*  
occasióne, *f., occasion.*  
óra, *hour.*

cortesía, *courtesy.*  
líra, *lira, coin worth about 20 cents.*

áltro, *other.*  
stêssó, *same.*  
vénti, *twenty.*

**chiamáre**, to call; **cóme si chiáma?**

what is the name of?

**domandáre**, to ask.<sup>1</sup>

**incontráre**, to meet.

**insegnáre**, to teach.

**lasciáre**, to leave, let.<sup>2</sup>

**mandáre**, to send.

**mostráre**, to show.

**presentáre**, to present.

**prestáre**, to lend.

**raccontáre**, to narrate, tell, tell about.<sup>1</sup>

**ringraziáre**, to thank.

**spiegáre**, to explain.

<sup>1</sup> The personal object of *domandáre* or *raccontáre* is indirect: *gli domandái*, 'I asked him'; *le raccontái*, 'I told her.'

<sup>2</sup> *Lasciáre* is to be used in translating 'let' only when the idea is one of permission rather than one of command. For example, if 'let him speak' really means 'I command that he speak,' it is to be translated *párli*; if it really means 'allow him to speak,' it is to be translated *lasciátelo parláre*.

**5. Translate:** vi aspétto, ne cercáva, ce lo cantárono, ne parláste, non ne avrèbbe, êccoli, portándoglielo, ripetéteglielo, gliéne parlerò, bisógna portárglielo, êccola, ce li cedétte, portiámogliene, me le mandò?, gliélo prestái, ve lo spiegheránno, mandátemeli, gliélo préstino, mi si presénta, gli si preséntano, se lo preséntano, lo mostrái lóro, ve ne mandárono?, me lo spièghi, gliélo presteréte?

**6. Study these sentences:** 1. Quell' ombréllo êra il súo, e stamáne gliélo mandái. 2. Se non credésse quel che gli raccontámmo, non gliélo ripeterèbbe. 3. Cominciáva a domandárgli perchè ne avésse parláto ágli áltri. 4. Ve lo spiegherà quándo gli si presenterà úna buóna ocasióne. 5. Lo ringraziái délla cortesía, e gli raccontái tútto. 6. Ógni vólta che s' incóntrano, si ripêtono gli stéssi compliménti. 7. Cóme si chiáma quel giòvane che v' inségna il francése? 8. Il trêno êra in ritárdo, e l' aspettárono un' óra e piú. 9. Óra lasciáteli studiáre; parlerémo dópo. 10. Ho a pagáre súbito, e non ho úna líra: Giovánni ha ricevúto óggi vénti líre, non è véro?<sup>1</sup> Me ne presterèbbe dièci?

<sup>1</sup> non è vero? 'hasn't he?'

**7. Translate into Italian:** 1. He is in the garden. Call him — they are looking for him. 2. He presented himself to me yesterday. I believe him even younger than the others. 3. Where are my pencils? didn't I leave them on the desk? 4. If he loses it, it will

alla scrivania

se lo perderà

cost him twenty lire. 5. It is necessary to watch them day and night. 6. He has a French automobile, and he'll show it to us Monday. 7. Whose tickets are those? Are they your cousin's? Why don't you send them to him? 8. If I didn't believe what she told me, I wouldn't repeat it to you. 9. If he receives that money, he will pay me at once. 10. If she finds this lesson too difficult, he will explain it to her tomorrow.

<sup>1</sup> No preposition is used between *bisognare* and a dependent infinitive.

## LESSON 14. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

### Study 61.

### EXERCISE 14

1. *Identify and translate:* finì, finiréte, finiscono, finirò, finiste, finivano, finii, finiranno, finirèi, finisci, finirono, finirai, finite, finiremo, finisca, finivo.

2. *Translate into Italian:* I finished, she would finish, we were finishing, he is finishing, finish, they finished, let us finish, finishing, they finish, we should finish, he finished, you finish, let him finish.

### VOCABULARY

autunno, autumn.

colóre, m., color.

pericolo, danger.

spedále, m., hospital.

vêto, wind.

vestito, dress.

cúra, care.

stôffa, stuff, goods.

cattivo, bad.

chiáro, clear, bright.

tânto, so much.<sup>1</sup>

applaudire, to applaud.

avvertire, to warn.

capire, to understand.

divertire, to amuse.

dormire, to sleep.

ferire, to wound.

fuggire, to flee.

garantire, to guarantee.

partire, to depart, leave.<sup>2</sup>

preferire, to prefer.

restituire, to give back.

sentire, to feel, hear.

servire, to serve.

<sup>1</sup> 'So much' is to be translated by *tânto*; not by the separate words for 'so' and 'much.'

<sup>2</sup> When 'leave' is transitive, it is to be translated by *lasciare*; when intransitive, by *partire*.

alméno, *at least.*  
 invéce, *instead.*  
 nondiméno, *nevertheless.*  
 prima di, *before.*

sênza, *without.*  
 stanôtte, *last night.*  
 staséra, *this evening.*  
 súbito che, *as soon as.*<sup>1</sup>

1. 'As soon as' is to be translated by *súbito che*; not by the separate words for 'as' and 'soon.'

3. Give the present indicative of each of these verbs: capíre, divertíre, dormíre, fuggíre, garantíre, preferíre.

4. Translate: dormiámo, capirêbbe, servíva, avvertirà, applaudíte, garantíscono, divêrte, fuggírono, ferisce, servêndo, preferímmo, fuggí, avvertíto, feríte, preferirêbbero, divêrtono, sentísti, serviránno, sênta, capíscono.

5. Translate into Italian: he will amuse, I was sleeping, fleeing, they prefer, we understood, she served, they will applaud, you fled, I should guarantee, sleep.

6. Study these sentences: 1. <sup>at.</sup> Súbito che me ne parlò, capíi che l' avéva perdúto. 2. Se ci sêrve bène, le pagherémo vénti lire la settimána. 3. Gliélo restituiránno súbito che tórna. 4. L' avvertíi che c' êra perícolo, ma partì nondiméno. 5. Se si divêrtono óra invéce di lavoráre, dománi avránno a lavoráre invéce di divertírsi. 6. Avéva cantáto móltó bène, e tútti l' applaudívano. 7. Che vênto stanôtte! Lo sentísti? Sì, non dormíi un' óra in tútta la nôtte. 8. Il feríto fu portáto állo spedále. 9. Partírono sênza ringraziárci, benchè avéssimo cercáto tánto di divertírli. 10. Il mése cominciò con úna settimána di bël têmpo — giòrni chiári e cáldi — ma finì con dièci giòrni fréddi e scúri.

7. Translate into Italian: 1. If he doesn't guarantee it for a year at least, we won't buy it. 2. Although he heard them speak, he fled like the wind. 3. I explained it to him with much care, but he doesn't understand it yet. 4. If he is still sleeping, he won't finish that lesson. 5. The trees are losing the last leaves: the autumn is ending, and the winter is beginning. 6. Did you hear what he told them? 7. This room is warm, but in the parlor we felt the cold. 8. We shall leave this evening if the weather isn't

too bad. 9. What goods and what color does she prefer for the dress? 10. When will you finish that work? I shall not have the time to (*di*) finish it before Monday.

## LESSON 15. DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

### Study 51.

### EXERCISE 15

1. Translate into Italian, expressing the subject pronouns (use *lui, lei, and loro* for the third person): I am, thou hast, he speaks, she fears, we finish, you feel, they are, I had, thou didst enter, he yielded, she understood, we slept, you were, they had, I shall pay, thou wilt receive, he will guarantee, she will depart, we shall be, you will have, they will enter.

### VOCABULARY

avvocato, lawyer.  
bicchière, m., glass.  
facchino, porter.  
latte, m., milk.  
mèzzogiórno, noon.

ária, air.  
lèttera, letter.  
libertà, liberty, freedom.  
móglie, f., wife.  
sèggiola, chair.  
valígia, valise, bag.

aiutáre, to help.  
restáre, to stay.

accánto a, beside.  
cóntro, cóntro di,<sup>1</sup> against.  
davánti a, in front of.  
diétro, diétro a,<sup>1</sup> behind.  
secóndo, according to.

avánti, forward; come in.<sup>2</sup>  
così, so.  
èh, ch.  
mái, ever, never; non . . . mái,<sup>3</sup>  
never.  
nemméno, non . . . nemméno,<sup>3</sup>  
not even.  
perfèttaménte, perfectly.  
príma, first.

<sup>1</sup> The compound form is used before a disjunctive pronoun, the simple form in other cases.

<sup>2</sup> As an exclamation.

<sup>3</sup> When *mái* (meaning 'never') or *nemméno* follows the verb, *non* is placed before the verb.

**2. Study these sentences:** 1. Portáte a quèsto signóre un caffè, e a me un bicchière di látte. 2. Se lóro ce l' hánno raccontáto a nói, perchè non gliélo racconterémmo nói a lúi? 3. Felíci vói, che godéte quell' ária e quèlla libertà, méntre ío rêsto qui in città a lavoráre cóme un facchino! 4. Chi è? Sóno ío. Chi, ío? Ío, Giovánni. Siéte vói, êh? avánti. 5. Se non gliélo spiéga bène, gli è che non lo capísce bène nemméno lúi. 6. A quel teátro me non mi ci troveréte mái piú. 7. Pórta sèmpre con sè úna valígia tútta piéna di líbri, ma pòi non ne guárda nemméno úno. 8. Lúi le parláva cóntro di me — e ío avévo lavoráto tánto per lúi! 9. Quándo entrái, lèi éra qui; accánto a lèi, Giovánni, che le parláva di sè stéssu, cóme sèmpre; e davánti a lúi, in quèsta sèggiola, la píccola sorèlla di lèi, che guardáva óra l' úno óra l' áltra. 10. Quándo lo perdéi, lóro mi aiutárono a cercálo.

**3. Translate into Italian:** 1. They spoke of it to us, to you, and to him. 2. If it's he, call him, and show him that letter. 3. I myself telephoned to you, and asked you if he would arrive there before noon. 4. I think that you will receive it tomorrow. 5. If *you* were here with them, they would be perfectly happy. 6. If he stays, they will leave. 7. He was speaking to us, but we thought that he was speaking to them. 8. He and his cousin left before us, but we arrived there an hour before them. 9. According to him, she was staying at home because the weather was so bad. 10. The lawyer's wife came in first; then, behind her, the two girls; behind them, three porters with the trunks; and finally the lawyer himself.

## LESSON 16. COMPOUND TENSES

*Study the compound tenses in 53 (a) and 53 (b), 54 [omitting (c)–(h)], 55, 56, and the second sentence in 75.*

### EXERCISE 16

**1. Identify and translate:** ho trováto, avéva trováto, êbbe trováto, avrémo trováto, avréste trováto; sóno trováto, éra trováto, fu trováto, sarémo trováti, sarèbbero trováti; sóno státo trováto, éra státo trováto, sarémo státi trováti, saréste státo trováto; sóno tornáto, éra

tornáto, fu tornáto, sarémo tornáti, saréste tornáti; mi sóno divertíto, si éra divertíto, ci sarémo divertíti, si sarèbbero divertíti.

2. *Translate each of these phrases in six ways (as true reflexive, masculine and feminine; as substitute for the passive, masculine, feminine, and neuter; and as indefinite):* si presêta, si trôva, si servì, si perderà.

3. *Translate each of these phrases in three ways: (as true reflexive, as reciprocal, and as substitute for the passive):* si capíscono, si chiámano, si trovárono.

4. *Translate:* l' hánno avúto, c' éra státo, l' avrò cominciáto, mi avrèbbe telefonáto, siête feríto, vi siête feríto, vi fúrono trováti, gli saránno restituíti, gli si restituiránno, sarémmo presentáti lóro, gli è spiegáto, gli si spiêga, gli è státo spiegáto, gli si è spiegáto, ci siámo spiegáti, ce lo siámo spiegáti, si êrano incontráti, siámo arriváti, vi fu mostráto, gli si presenterà, le éra státo raccontáto, le si éra raccontáto, si è presentáta, si sóno presentáte, li avrèbbe aspettáti, ci ha capíto, ci avévano ringraziáti, si éra perdúto, êrano fuggíti, si è feríto, vi sóno arriváti, ci êrano státi mandáti, ci si êrano mandáti, vi avéva aiutáto, essêndo temúto, ci si spiêga, gliélo avévano raccontáto, vi avrémmo ringraziáto.

5. *Translate into Italian:* we have found you, we have been there, they had had it, he will have eaten it, we should have sent it to you, he had<sup>1</sup> arrived, they are received,<sup>2</sup> they would have presented themselves to us, you would have found each other, they had<sup>1</sup> come in, he had left them, they would have<sup>1</sup> fled, it has been told to me.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Translate by the proper form of *essere*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate this phrase in two ways.

6. *Study these sentences:* 1. Sóno cêrto che se ci fósse státo cógli áltro, ce ne avrèbbe parláto. 2. Perchè non ha cominciáto a cercáre quel che perdêtte? 3. Quándo lóro saránno tornáti, nói sarémo già partíti. 4. Non li avrà finíti práma di dománi. 5. Non ha mái visitáto quel giardíno? Gliéne abbíamo parláto tante vólte. 6. Le sêggiole che mi si mostrávano êrano móltro bèle, e le avréi compráte se avéssi avúto il denáro. 7. Mi si éra raccontáto che lúi ci fósse státo, ma non l' avévo credúto. 8. Se hánno ricevúto la súa



lètera, saránno già partíti per la città. 9. Lúi avéva temúto che cedéssero álle nòstre preghiére. 10. Si mángia a mêzzogiórno, e un' óra dópo si tórna al lavóro.

7. *Translate into Italian:* 1. If he had had any, he would have sent us some. 2. Being called, I entered, and found myself where I had been the day before. 3. That bag that he had lost has been given back to him. 4. Let him explain to her why they hadn't telephoned to her. 5. I would have sent it to you if I had found it. 6. As soon as he had called them, he came back into the house. 7. When I arrived, they had<sup>1</sup> already left. 8. If they had begun them, they would have finished two or three of them. 9. He told me that he had<sup>1</sup> arrived there before the others. 10. I should have preferred a room with at least two windows.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by the proper form of *essere*.

## LESSON 17. REVIEW

### EXERCISE 17

1. *Pronounce Exercise A on p. 150.*

2. *Give the plural of each of these combinations:* all' avvocáto gentíle, che bèl salòtto!, col lóro fratèllo, dálla súa bèlla máno, dell' uòmo felíce, il gran baúle, il mío cugíno, il poèta francése, il súdo bèll' ombrèllo, la città modèrna, la giòvane móglie, l' áltra finèstra, lo stéssu ragázzo, nell' università nuòva, quále stánza?, quel buòn pádre, quéllo studènte italiáno, quel píccolo caffè, quel servitóre fedéle, quèsta lezióne diffícile, súlla tórre álta.

3. *Translate:* se lúi ci aiutásse, érano státi amáti, aspettándole, l' avevámo, ne avrái, li hánnno battúti, si capísce, lo cedémmo lóro, lo cómprano, si érano divertítì, ci entrárono, se lóro non ci fóssero, s' incontrárono, gliélo mandái, lúi lo mangerà, ve ne avévo parláto, chi li perdétte?, che còsa preferirèbbe lèi?, se lo premésse, ci sarèi restáto, le telefonávo, lasciátolo, benchè ci capísca, ve lo restituirà, non l' hánnno ricevúta, ripetéteglielo, vi saréste, gliélo restituí, non gli cédano, siète chiamáto, se lo spiegheránnno, sóno státi ricevúti, gli si è restituíto, le sarà spiegáto, si è perdúto, ve lo manderánnno,

gliéli avrèbbero mostráti, se vi avéssero sentíto, la sêrvano, benchè lo témano, lúi li avvertì, non gliéne parláte, ce lo spiegárono, gli si êrano presentáti.

4. *Translate into Italian:* there they are, we shall be there, if they should buy it, they would carry it to him, he will applaud them, *I* feared it, are they fighting there?, they are not fleeing, we should have gone in, they would have had it, did he have any?, although they had lost it, will they pay me?, I should prefer it, what has he received?, wait for us.

5. *Study these proverbs:*<sup>1</sup> 1. A ógni uccêllo súdo nído è bêllo. 2. Buóna compagnía, mêzza la vía. 3. Chi cêrca, trôva. 4. Chi dôrme non píglia pésci. 5. Chi ha fioríni trôva cugini. 6. Chi non lavóra non mángia. 7. Chi s' aiúta, il ciêl l' aiúta. 8. Chi târdi arríva, mále allôggia. 9. Gli assênti han sêmpre tôrto. 10. Il buôn víno non ha bisógno di frásca. 11. Il pássò piú dúro è quéllo dell' úscio. 12. La fáme non ha légge. 13. La fíne coróna l' ôpera. 14. La nôtte pôrta consíglío. 15. L' auróra indôra. 16. L' età pôrta sênno. 17. Mêglío târdi che mái. 18. Non v' è rôsa sênza spíne. 19. Ôggi a me, dománi a te. 20. Scôpa nuôva scôpa bêne.

<sup>1</sup> Many of the sentences from this point on contain words not given in the preceding vocabularies. See the statements on pp. 155 and 171.

6. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Whose ideas are those? They are not yours, I hope. 2. If you hadn't told it to me yourself, I shouldn't have believed it. 3. If you haven't the money, I'll lend it to you with pleasure. 4. I was afraid that you were<sup>1</sup> wrong, but according to my cousin's letter you are right. 5. How many times has he repeated it to you? 6. Whom are they calling? I thought that they were<sup>1</sup> all here. 7. He was studying there at the desk, and didn't even look at them when they came in. 8. Although there are not so many churches here, they are more interesting than those we visited yesterday. 9. Why didn't he let us go in? Probably because it was too early. 10. Who was it that telephoned to you? That gentleman to whom I telephoned this morning. He is going back tomorrow to Venice.

<sup>1</sup> Use the subjunctive.

## LESSON 18. THE MODERN POLITE FORM OF DIRECT ADDRESS

### Study 52.

### EXERCISE 18

1. *Translate in two ways (as third person feminine, and as used in direct address):* lèi è qui, con lèi, la chiamávano, chiámo lèi, le parlerò, è cêrta, è restáta, lèi cantáva, dópo di lèi, la ringrázio, guardávano lèi, le telefonerèi, sarà fortunáta, si è divertíta.

2. *Translate in three ways (as third person masculine, as third person feminine, and as used in direct address):* êra là, l' aiuterò, gliélo mandái, si trôva, se lo ripête, pârli, mi pârli, è gentíle, il súo libro, studiáva, l' incontrái, gliéne ha parláto, si divêrte, cêda, si spiêghi, êra giòvane, i suôi occhiáli.

3. *Translate in two ways (as third person, and as used in direct address):* sóno qui, lóro êrano próni, cóntro di lóro, li chiamáva, le incontrái, riceverò lóro, parlerò lóro, si trôvano, se lo ripêtono, pârlino, mi pârlino, sóno cêrti, êrano entráte, il lóro trêno.

4. *Replace these phrases by the corresponding phrases in modern polite usage, supposing one person to be addressed:* saréte qui, vói ci capíte, secóndo vói, vi troverò, cercávo vói, vi applaudívano, ve lo prêsto, vi siête feríto, ve lo ripetéste, guardáte, sentítemi, il vóstro ombrêllo.

5. *Replace the phrases in section 4 by the corresponding phrases in modern polite usage, supposing two men to be addressed.*

NOTE. — In the remainder of this exercise, and in all the following exercises, use only the modern polite form of direct address, and suppose the English 'you' to be singular, unless there is some indication that it refers to more than one person.

6. *Translate into Italian:* you are working, you will sing, for you, I'm waiting for you, I will serve you, he will telephone to you, I was speaking to you, did he send it to you?, you were explaining yourself, did you repeat it to yourself?, stay, thank him, you are happy, you have returned, your brother.

7. Translate the first five sentences in Ex. 14, section 6, and the first five in Ex. 16, section 6, supposing them to be used in direct address.

8. Translate into Italian the first five sentences in Ex. 15, section 3, and the first five in Ex. 17, section 6, using the modern polite form of direct address.

## LESSON 19. ANDÁRE AND FÁRE

Study 92 through 2 (Fare); also 48 (a), (b), (c), 54 (h), 56(b), 78(d).

### EXERCISE 19

1. Translate: andò, andréte, vánno, andáste, va', èra andáto, ci andrêi, vâda, andávano, sóno andáti, vi andái, andávo, sarêbbe andáta, vátte, si va.

2. Translate into Italian: we went, you<sup>1</sup> go, they will go, you went there, he will go, he has gone there, they are going away, it goes, we should have gone, go, she went away, let them go.

<sup>1</sup> Remember the directions given in the NOTE on p. 123.

3. Translate: fáccia, facéste, fátto, facciámo, fécerò, avéva fátto, farésti, fo, li féce, farà, lo fácciano, si fa, è fátto, lo si fa, fáteli entráre, la fa lêggere,<sup>1</sup> le fa lêggere la lèttera, gliéla fa lêggere, me lo féce trováre.

<sup>1</sup> Translate this phrase in two ways.

4. Translate into Italian: I did, he will do, they are making, doing, they would make, make, you made, we have made, let them make, they will do it, we made them, they are made, I'll have him sing, I'll have it sung, I'll have him sing it.

5. Study these sentences: 1. Mi fáccia il favóre di chiamárlo súbito. 2. Chi va píano va sáno<sup>1</sup> e va lontáno. 3. Facciámo una partíta al biliárdo? Ôggi no, ho trôppo da fáre, ío. 4. Se lo pèrde, gliélo faránno cercáre. 5. I suòi affári andrêbbero mêglio se non amásse tánto il dólce far niênte. 6. Quándo lúi tornò da fáre il soldáto, lèi

<sup>1</sup> sano, 'safely.' Predicate adjectives are often adverbial in force.

si era fatta sposa con un altro. 7. "Ah sì?" fece lui, "lasci fare a me." 8. Fa freddo: perchè non fanno un pò di fuoco qui? 9. Dopo faranno molte nuòve conoscènze, che si chiameranno anche amicizie, ma le più vére saranno sèmpre le amicizie fatte in giovinèzza. 10. Se n' andò in Amèrica, e subito si fece ricco, ma poi perdette ogni còsa, e se ne tornò pòvero pòvero<sup>1</sup> com' era andato.

<sup>1</sup> The repetition of a word serves to emphasize it.

6. *Translate into Italian:* 1. He goes to the city every day. 2. Go and see if they are here. 3. I had him make it so because the other one was made so. 4. If they had gone there yesterday, they would have found him there. 5. We had him carry it to the village. 6. If they do as he has done, they will do more honor to him than to themselves. 7. We make more of it than they, and ours is better than theirs. 8. He went away this morning, but he'll come back soon. 9. Let him go and find it and bring it to me here. 10. It's a pretty place: we go there every Sunday.

*Sublime posto: Ce andiamo ogni domenica.*

## LESSON 20. DÁRE AND STÁRE

Study 92, 3 and 4; also 54 (c), (d).

### EXERCISE 20

1. *Translate:* diède, darète, <sup>gave</sup> dia, dánno, dètte, darái, dèste, diámo, dièdero, <sup>from one</sup> dái, hánno dáto, me lo dávano, gliélo darèbbe?, ce lo día, diámogliene, ve ne daránno, se ne dà, l' avéva dáto lóro, dämmene, gli si è dáto.

2. *Translate into Italian:* I should give, I gave, you are giving, give, we have given, I was giving, they gave them to me, he gives himself to us, he gave them some, I had given it to her, will you give me some?, we should have given them to you.

3. *Translate:* starèste, stávano, siètte, stía, stèste, stánno, sièterò, starèbbe, státe, sta', stémmo, stái, stiano, stiámo, starà, stò lavorádo, stáva parládo, stáva per dírmelo.

4. *Translate into Italian:* he <sup>stava</sup> was standing, they would stand, I stood, let them stand, we stood, you are standing, stand, let us stand, he stood, they are calling, I was about to thank you.

5. *Study these sentences:* 1. Còs' hái in quèlla máno? Dámmelo súbito. 2. Còme sta? Beníssimo, grázie, e Lêi? 3. Stáva per domandárgli perchè non se ne fósse andáto. 4. Per il Natále gli si dièdero déi líbri italiáni. 5. Chi dà prèsto, è còme se désse due vòlte. 6. Stía attènto: non si fáccia mále. 7. Daránno il vóto a chi mèglio li pága. 8. Poverétta! Sta sèmpre lì a cucíre. 9. Príma facéva l' ingegnère, ma pòi si diède állo stúdio délla filosofía. 10. Tútti gli facévano degl' inchíni profóndi, e gli dávano dell' illustríssimo.

6. *Translate into Italian:* 1. He gave you two of them, and I gave you three. 2. They have come back, but they are standing outside. 3. If it's his, give it to him. 4. They were explaining it to him when we came in. 5. Here you are at last: I was about to go and call you. 6. How much would you have given him? Not a cent. 7. They are giving a dinner this evening for that English writer. 8. Yesterday he was a little better, but today he's worse. 9. I thank you, sir; your words have given me the courage to (di) continue. 10. Give them some money, but don't let them come in.

1 Translate by the proper form of *essere*.

2 Use the partitive construction.

## LESSON 21. ARTICLES

*Study 10-16 inclusive, 45 (a)-(e) inclusive.*

### EXERCISE 21

1. *Review Exercise 3, sections 2, 3, 4.*

2. *Study these sentences:* 1. Nell' unità sta la fòrza. 2. Preferísce l' Ariòsto állo Spenser e Dánte állo Shakespeare. 3. Andámmo in Inghiltèrra cólla mádre, e quándo nói tornámmo lêi ci restò con úna súa cugína. 4. Èra órfano, ma un sùo zío gli facéva da pádre. 5. Avéva i capélli néri e fólti; néri ánche gli ócchi; néro l' ábito, néri

i guánti. 6. Il mēdico gli toccáva il pólso: la 'fēbbre montáva. 7. Si è fáttö mólto mále; avrà a restáre a cása úna settimána alméno. 8. Gli uòmini piú grándi hánno quási sēmpre le maniére sēmplici. 9. È un gran poēta; chi lo nēga párla da scioccò. 10. Ha vendúto la cása e ógni còsa, ed è partíto per gli Státi Uníti d' Amērica.

3. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Habits make us what we are. 2. We are still in France, but we hope to (di) go to Italy this summer. 3. Mr. Rossi loves books, and spends almost all his time in his study; if he isn't well, it's his fault. 4. Poor Ghedini was a friend of mine. 5. Last year Queen Margherita travelled through France. 6. He took off his hat and made us a low bow. 7. Venice is perhaps the most beautiful of the cities of Italy. 8. If he is an Italian, let him be worthy of his fatherland. 9. He is still very young, but he talks like a man. 10. Give him your handkerchief quick; he has cut his hand.

## LESSON 22. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

Read 64-67; study 92, 6-10.

### EXERCISE 22

1. *Translate:* saprò, sēppe, sái, saprémmo, sánno, sapévo, cádono, cadrò, cáddi, cadúto, cádde, cadrēbbe, dobbiámo, dovētti, dēvi, dovémmo, dovérone, dovréte, sedéi, siēdono, sedēndo, sedéte, sedētte, sedéva, véda, víde, vedrái, vísto, védano, vídero; l' avrémo sapúto, vi cádde, me lo dēve, vi sedéva?, ce lo vedémmo, lo sēppero, ci sarēbbe cadúto, gliélo dobbiámo, ci sedētti, li vedrà.

2. *Translate into Italian:* we know, they knew, you had known, know, they fell, I was falling, we shall fall, you fell, he owes, we should owe, they owe, owing, he is sitting, they will sit, you were sitting, seated, we should see, let him see, I saw, let us see; did he know it?, they had fallen there, they owe it to her, they are sitting there, did they see us?

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Stávano insiême álla finêstra a guardáre la néve che cadéva lênta lênta. 2. Che búio! Non ci si véde<sup>1</sup> púnto! 3. Il pôvero vécchio stáva sedúto al cánto del camíno. 4. Vídero il lóro bambíno che giocáva<sup>2</sup> cólle pistòle déllo zío. 5. Non so se Lêi sáppia la trístè notízia. 6. Si vedéva nêlle sùe maniêre un non so che di nuôvo e di stráno. 7. Mi hánno dáto tútto; non mi si déve più núlla. 8. Cói pensiêri che gli girávano per la têsta non sapéva più in che mólto si fósse. 9. Il pôco che si sa, si sáppia bène. 10. Non dimenticáte i cadúti per la pátria.

<sup>1</sup> *Non ci si véde, 'One can't see.'* There are several verbs that may assume the idea of possibility in the present and past descriptive tenses.

<sup>2</sup> *che giocáva, 'playing.'* An Italian relative clause is often equivalent to an English participle.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Let's see where they are going. 2. He was standing there talking with his brother, when a brick fell on his head. 3. Did you see them speak to him? Do you know their names? 4. They will not know what we are doing. 5. See: they have given me some gloves like yours. 6. I hope that tomorrow you will all know the lesson. 7. If I see him I'll give him the ten lire I owe him. 8. He had him sit down beside the desk. 9. Were they not standing there when you saw them? 10. He owed him everything, yet he went away leaving him alone and sick.

<sup>1</sup> Use the partitive construction.

## LESSON 23. NOUNS

*Study 22, 23, 24, 25.*

### EXERCISE 23

1. *Review Exercise 4, sections 2 and 3.*

2. *Give the plural of each of these masculine nouns:* ágo, amíco, bácio, bôsko, bráccio, cántico, collêga, díto, dúca, equívoco, fíglio, fuôco, ginôcchio, guáio, luêgo, míglio, mônaco, nemíco, ôbbligó, ôcchio, páio, patriárca, stúdio, túrco, uôvo.

3. *Give the plural of each of these feminine nouns:* bibliotêca, côsca, fábrica, fáccia, frángia, fúga, giácca, léga, valánga, valígia.



4. Give the masculine and feminine plural of each of these adjectives: artístico, búio, cárico, ciêco, clássico, dóppio, frésco, grígio, lárgo, lúngo, pôco, prôprio, simpático, vágo, vêcchio.

5. Study these sentences: 1. La ricchézza déi contadíni sta nêlle bráccia. 2. Tornárono tútti cárichi di frúttá e di confêtti. 3. Si sentì tremáre le ginôccia per la paúra. 4. E i mêdici, non gli dánno piú speránza? 5. In quêi villággi ci sôno moltíssimi ciechi. 6. I suoi<sup>1</sup> lo crêdono un buôn ragázzo; ma ha mólti vízi e pochíssime virtù. 7. Che c' è di nuôvo? Gli operái hánno fáttó sciôpero. 8. Ha studiáto il tedéscó dúe ánni, ed óra lo párla assái bêne. 9. Il súo aspêttó avéva quálche còsa di misteriôso, quási di divíno. 10. Le lóro fácce e maniêre hánno un non so che di sêmplice e di umáno che fa vedére che la lóro víta si fónða sul véro e non sul fálsó.

<sup>1</sup> *I suoi*, 'His family.' The masculine plural possessives are often used in this way.

6. Translate into Italian: 1. Yesterday morning they walked more than ten miles. 2. They hope that their old friends will arrive this evening. 3. We saw them with our own eyes. 4. The lakes are longer than they<sup>1</sup> are<sup>1</sup> broad. 5. He has finished his studies on the libraries of ancient times. 6. Give me two pairs of stockings. 7. They are very agreeable young men. 8. Her eyes were black as night, and her cheeks were white as snow. 9. He has lost two fingers of his right hand. 10. The monarchs of Milan were called dukes; those of Venice, doges; those of Rome, popes; and those of Naples, kings.

<sup>1</sup> Omit these words in translating.

## LESSON 24. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION (continued)

Study 92, II-17.

### EXERCISE 24

1. Translate: giácciono, giáccue, giácêndo, piacerêi, piáce, piáquero, táccia, táci, tácqui, suôle, sôlito, solévano, dorrà, dôlse, rimásero, rimánga, rimarrêste, tiêne, terréte, ténne, tenúti, têngano.

teniámo; gli piáce,<sup>1</sup> gli piáccio, le piácciono, vi piáceva?, piáccue lóro, gli duóle,<sup>1</sup> vi rimángano, c' è rimásta, vi saráno rimásti, li tenéva, teniámolo, l' avéva tenúto.

<sup>1</sup> The personal object of *piacére* or *dolére* is indirect.

2. *Translate into Italian:* he was lying, it lay, they please, you will please, they were silent, we shall be silent, they were wont, it grieves, remain, they remain, thou holdest, they would hold; it pleases me, I like it,<sup>1</sup> they please me, I like them, it pleased him, he liked it, she liked it, we liked it, they liked it, they have remained there, they are held, we should have held them.

<sup>1</sup> When 'like' has a noun or a pronoun as object, the sentence should be recast for translation into Italian by substituting 'please' for 'like,' and making the original object the subject and the original subject the object: 'I like it' = 'it pleases me.'

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Gli piacerèbbe mólto se Lái gliélo dèsse. 2. Arrivárono lunedì, e ci rimarráno alméno fíno a doménica. 3. Non crédo che quel pósto gli piáccia:<sup>1</sup> non c' è niénte da fáre. 4. Iêri m' entrò úna spína nel piède, e ancóra mi duóle. 5. Têngo per férmo che un tále dóno non gli piacerà. 6. Facéva un gran fréddo; ma si tenéva vívo il fuòco, e si stáva al caminétto. 7. È diffícile piacergli, e lúi non cërca mái di piaceré a nessúno. 8. Ha tante buone qualità: peccáto che non sáppia tenér la língua. 9. Mi fáccia il piaceré di fármelo vedére. 10. La nòtte tacéva: non un suòno, non úna vóce; sólo si sentíva, da lontáno, il mormorío del fúme.

<sup>1</sup> *piáccia*, 'will please.' The present subjunctive often has a future tense-value.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. It fell and lay three days on the ground. 2. He was sitting in the room where his brother lay sick. 3. Have you seen my new coat? how do you like it? 4. If they keep still, we shall not know where they have been. 5. I have been studying too much; my eyes are paining me. 6. If you don't like this one, I will give you another. 7. It would grieve him very much if they should go<sup>1</sup> away now. 8. The village lies at the foot of the mountain, near the river. 9. Don't go now: stay to dinner, and then let's go to the theatre. 10. He kept us in doubt up to the last moment.

<sup>1</sup> 'should go': use the past subjunctive.

## LESSON 25. AUGMENTATIVES, DIMINUTIVES, AND NUMERALS

*Study 35-40 inclusive.*

### EXERCISE 25

1. *Pronounce and translate:* cinquantatrè, settantasèi, novantadúe, cêntodiciassètte, dugêntoquarantôtto, quattrocêntottantúno, seicêntotrentanôve, novecêntosessantasètte, milletrecêntoventidúe, millenovecêntoquíndici, tremilaquarantacínque.

2. *Read in Italian:* 31, 77, 243, 854, 1265, 1321, 1492, 1621, 1775, 1915; Sisto IV, Innocênzo VIII, Alessándro VI, Pío III, Giúlio II, Leóné X, Adriáno VI, Clemênte VII, Pío IX, Leóné XIII, Pío X, Benedétto XV.

3. *Translate:* sóno le tre, sóno le cínque e dièci, sóno le dièci e un quáрто, sóno le sèi e mêzzo, sóno le nôve méno vénti, sóno le ôtto méno un quáрто, sóno le dúe méno dódici.

4. *Translate into Italian:* it's four o'clock, it's 6:12, it's half past eight, it's 25 minutes of nine, it's six minutes of five; April 1, April 2, April 3, April 22.

5. *Translate in terms of American money:*<sup>1</sup> dièci centèsimi, cinquánta centèsimi, úna líra e vénti centèsimi, trentún sòllo, dúe líre e quaránta, cínque líre e mêzzo, sètte líre e cinquánta, vénti líre, sessantadúe líre e quarantacínque centèsimi, mílle líre.

<sup>1</sup> 100 centèsimi = 1 líra = 20 cents; 5 centèsimi = 1 sòllo.

6. *Translate in terms of Italian money:* \$.05, \$.18, \$.25, \$.42, \$1.00, \$1.50, \$6.38, \$100.00.

7. *Study these sentences:* 1. La lèttera fu datáta "Róma, venerdì 15 febráio 1823." 2. Lo fornì di úna ventína di líre, trôppe per chi le dáya, trôppo pôche per chi le ricevéva. 3. Il còsto totále sarêbbe di líre cinquantasèi e centèsimi settantacínque. 4. Lúi allóra avéva ventiquáttro ánni, e lêi soltáto diciôtto. 5. Êrano in tútto quíndici bigliétti da dièci líre. 6. Nel quarantôtto combàttè a Miláno cóntro gli Austríaci. 7. Ha pubblicáto or óra un volúme súlla pittúra del

Trecênto. 8. Vi andò néi prîmi giòrni del 1612, e vi rimàse fîno a mêzzo il 1614. 9. A che òra pàrte il trêno? Àlle quíndici e mêzzo, cioè àlle tre e mêzzo dôpo mêzzogiórno. 10. La raccôlta più importànte dèlle poesíe italiàne più antíche è il còdice vaticàno 3793.

8. *Translate into Italian:* 1. They woke me at five o'clock. It was dark and cold, and it was snowing hard. 2. The sonnet consists of 14 lines, and each line of 11 syllables. 3. The 15th century and the 16th are the two centuries of the Renaissance in Italy. 4. He made him repeat it five times. 5. The work of Manzóni falls in the first half of the 19th century. 6. I gave him 30 *lire*, and he bought two pairs of shoes. 7. Seven months have 31 days, four 30, and one 28 or 29. 8. Would you do me the favor to (*di*) lend me ten *lire* or so until Monday? 9. From the tower one saw thousands<sup>1</sup> and thousands of persons crowded in the streets and the squares. 10. Victor Emmanuel II was the first king of the Third Italy.

<sup>1</sup> Use *migliaio*.

## LESSON 26. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION (continued)

Study 92, 18-22; also 79 (b) 1.

### EXERCISE 26

1. *Translate:* varrò, vâlse, vâlgoño, valémmo, valévano, válsero, vògliono, vuòi, vorrà, volévo, vuòle, vorrèi, paíamo, párvi, pári, parrémmo, párvero, parréte, potéi, pòssono, potêndo, potéte, potè, può, persuáda, persuáse, persuadévano, persuadiámo, persuáso, persuádi; lo varránno, l' hánno volúto, ci êra párso, non avréste potúto, persuadételi, non lo valéva, vorránno fàrlo?, gli párve, non si può, sóno státi persuási.

2. *Translate into Italian:* it would be worth, we are worth, it was worth, you were worth, they wished, I was wishing, we shall wish, you wished, it seems, we should seem, they seem, seeming, he can, they will be able, you were able, they can, we should persuade, let him persuade, I persuaded, let us persuade; will it

be worth it?, did they wish it?, it seemed to us, we have not been able, haven't they persuaded him?

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Rimànga se può, ma vâda se ha da studiâre. 2. Quâto crêde che vâlgano quégli anêlli? 3. È difficile, lo so, ma còsa vuòle? fáccia tútto quéllo che potrà. 4. Avéva fáttö còme paréva mêglio a lúi. 5. La chiêsa sta più in álto: ci vuòle un' óra per arrivârci. Ôh allóra non vále la péna. 6. Chi non può fáre còme vuòle, fáccia còme può. 7. Non si può contentárlo: più ne ha e più ne vuòle. 8. Dúe non basteránno: ce ne vògliono alméno quáttro. 9. Se potésse fârmì quêsto piacére Le sarêi mîlle vòlte obbligáto. 10. Volére è potére.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. We shall not be able to persuade him. 2. They seem large, but they cannot be good. 3. If you wish it, they will stay with you. 4. I should not have thought that they were worth<sup>1</sup> so much. 5. They owe me 20 *lire*, and they are not willing to pay me. 6. I wanted to give it to you, but I couldn't. 7. My head aches so much that I can't study. 8. He's going away tomorrow, although he wants<sup>1</sup> to stay here. 9. I should like to speak to you about it; could you stay ten minutes or so? 10. It takes a brave man to (a) do a thing like that.

<sup>1</sup> Use the subjunctive.

*no doubt* *la festa*

## LESSON 27. AUXILIARY VERBS

*Study 54, 57.*

### EXERCISE 27

1. *Translate:* dèvo parlâre, dovévo parlâre, dovêi parlâre, dovrò parlâre, dovrêi parlâre, ho dovúto parlâre, avévo dovúto parlâre, avrò dovúto parlâre, avrêi dovúto parlâre; pôsso parlâre, potévo parlâre, potêi parlâre, potrò parlâre, potrêi parlâre, ho potúto parlâre, avévo potúto parlâre, avrò potúto parlâre, avrêi potúto parlâre; vòglio parlâre, volévo parlâre, vòlli parlâre, vorrò parlâre, vorrêi parlâre, ho volúto parlâre, avévo volúto parlâre, avrò volúto parlâre, avrêi volúto parlâre; gliélo avévano dovúto dâre, non avrémmo potúto persuadérlo, avréste volúto vedérli?, non êra

potúto entráre, avrèbbe dovúto finírllo, avevámó volúto comprárne; stiámó per andárcene, rimáse tradíto, <sup>he was</sup> <sup>studied</sup> va studiáto cosí, lo féceró portáre, bisogneràbbe prestárglieli, <sup>have to</sup> hánno da cercárllo, non saprèi spiegarlo, non potémmo a ménó di non tacére.

*we could not help*

2. *Translate into Italian:* they are to speak, we must speak, you were to speak, he had to speak, we shall have to speak, I <sup>could speak</sup> ~~ought to speak~~, he would have to speak, they have been obliged to speak, he must have spoken, she had had to speak, we shall have had to speak, he ought to have spoken, they were not able to speak, he may have spoken, they could have spoken, I should not have been able to speak, I might have spoken, will they be willing to speak?, he had been willing to speak.

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Avèndo tanto da fáre in città, avréste dovúto partíre col tréno dèlle sètte e mézzo. 2. Vòlle fáre úna vísita a càsa súa per vedére i suòi, che non avéva vísti da tanto tèmpo. 3. A quel tèmpo non si potéva vedére tútto ciò che s' è vedúto dópo. 4. Lásciano la scuòla con l' òdio per le còse di cúi si sóno dovúti occupáre e per gli autóri di cúi hánno dovúto studiáre le òpere. 5. Non capísco cóme úna còsa símile ábbia potúto accadére. 6. Dópo avér fáto tútti gli sfórzi possíbili, si è dovúto capitoláre. 7. Non sarèbbe potúto arriváre a Firénze neánche la séra. 8. Ti chiamerò prèsto perchè dovrái andáre álla stazióne a pièdi. 9. Avéva speráto che nèlla càsa patèrna avrèbbe potúto godére alméno un pò' d' affétto. 10. Mólto sa chi pòco sa, se tacér sa.

4. *Study these sentences:* 1. If I saw him, I should have to speak to him. 2. You ought to know when you will be able to bring it to us. 3. He <sup>would have had to keep still</sup> ~~would have had to keep still~~: he didn't know their names. 4. You must work if you want to please him. 5. They may find it, but I'm afraid that they have<sup>1</sup> left it in the city. 6. It grieves me, but I shall have to do it. 7. We ought to have kept still, but we couldn't help laughing. 8. He would like to know why they had to go away. 9. In what might I have the honor of serving you? 10. He always wanted to do what seemed best to him.

<sup>1</sup> Use the subjunctive.

## LESSON 28. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

*Study 92 (e), (f), (g) (on p. 85), 24-73 [omitting verbs marked Rare, and forms in parentheses].*

### EXERCISE 28

1. *Inflect the present tenses of affliggere, conóscere, créscere, and léggere.*

2. *Translate:* accendêdo, accése, afflító, allúdo, ardéva, arderà, risolvétte, chiúde, chiuderémo, conosciúto, conósca, conóbbero, corriámo, corrévano, córse, crésce, crescerà, cuôce, decída, decísi, difése, dirésse, dirigerò, discússero, distínti, divísero, esistíto, esístono, <sup>espréssere</sup> esprímáno, esprésse, fítto, fínga, fingiámo, frígge, fúso, invásero, lêggano, lêssero, mettiámo, mísi.

3. *Translate into Italian:* I light, he alluded, I will shut, he knew, run, grown, cooking, they decided, let us divide, it exists, he will express, fried, they will invade, let him read, they put.

4. *Study these sentences:* 1. Gli esprésse il súo rincresciménto per quel che si êra fátto. 2. Gli si leggéva la giòia nel víso. 3. Ci mise davánti<sup>1</sup> un mucchio di cárte. 4. Mi lásci parláre; non chiúda il cuôre álla pietà. 5. Lo conóbbi a Firênze l' áнно scórso. 6. Il fón-do del románzo è stòrico, ma vi è mescoláto il fínto col véro. 7. Più li conósce e più gli crésce l' amicízia per lóro. 8. Le opinióni si divísero: alcúni applaudírono la súa azióne, áltro la biasimárono. 9. Nel Cinquecênto Francési e Spagnuóli córsero tútta l' Itália. 10. Distinguiámo nel súo caráttere quel che vi è di sincêro<sup>2</sup> e quel che vi è di fálso.

<sup>1</sup> *Ci mise davánti*, 'He put before us.' When the logical object of an Italian preposition is an unemphatic personal pronoun, the use of a disjunctive pronoun is often avoided by putting a conjunctive pronoun before the verb and treating the preposition as an adverb.

<sup>2</sup> *quel che vi è di sincêro*, 'its elements of sincerity.'

5. *Translate into Italian:* 1. It's the third time she has read that book. 2. Do you know my friend Mr. Ghedíni? 3. He went to the door, shut it, and put the key in his pocket. 4. I lighted the other

light and ran into the room. 5. Do you want fried eggs? 6. What is she cooking now? 7. Do me the favor to (*di*) shut the door. Have those windows been shut? 8. Where did you put my hat? I have to go now, and I can't find it. 9. To whom was he alluding when he spoke of his enemies? 10. The schools will be closed from June to September.

## LESSON 29. MOODS AND TENSES

*Study 69-76 inclusive.*

### EXERCISE 29

1. *Study these sentences:* 1. Il lasciár<sup>the</sup> le múra délla città e il rivedére la cása patérna nel píccolo villággio, fúrono sensazioni piene di giòia. 2. Vedéndolo veníre con quéi líbri in máno, n' éra móltó lieta, sperándo che gliéli avrébbe regaláti. 3. Partírono pôco dópo il levár del sóle, e tornárono sul far délla séra. 4. Non sapéva nè cóme fáre nè dóve andáre. 5. A continuáre cosí si córre il perícólo di pèrdere tútto ciò che si è guadagnáto. 6. Credè di avér trováto quel che cercáva da tánto tèmpo. 7. Quándo avrái gli ánni che ho ío, non sarái míca sí prònto a giudicáre gli áltrí. 8. Finíta la lezióne, tornárono a cása, e trovárono il cuginó che li aspettáva. 9. Non ci avrébbe nùlla<sup>the see</sup> da dáre a un pôvero ciéco? 10. Tórno pián piáno álla cása; píccio; nessúno rispónde; éntro; e ci tróvo—còsa créde? 11. Inútile illudersi<sup>the see</sup>; non c' è più speránza. 12. L' ésser simpátici non básta, no; bisógna éssere útili a quálche còsa. 13. Rimarrái fíno álle cínque, non è véro? Non mi díre di no. 14. Quándo arrivái a cása, mío pádre non c' éra. Mía mádre si spaventò, perchè vedéndomi cosí pállido mi credétte maláto. 15. Auguráta la buóna nótte al padròne, se n' andò in frétta. 16. Lúi gli vendè l' ánima, e il diávolo gli promise che per un cèrto tèmpo gli avrébbe ubbidíto cóme a súo signóre. 17. Tornáti (che fúrono) domandárono súbito da mangiáre. 18. In quel vagóne è proibíto fumáre. 19. Appéna mi víde, la súa espressióne, da irrequiéta che éra,<sup>the see</sup> si féce minacciósa. 20. La stráda che ména a Sorrénto è un succédersi contínuo di púnti di vísta stupèndi.

<sup>1</sup> *Non ci avrébbe nùlla*, 'Haven't you anything?' The use of the past future gives the sentence an apologetic tone.

<sup>2</sup> *da irrequiéta che éra*, 'instead of anxious.'



2. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Do you prefer traveling to studying? 2. I'll have it given back at once. 3. Their manners may be crude, but they are sincere. 4. Gratitude is to be praised. 5. You know, doubtless,<sup>1</sup> that my brother has returned. 6. When you arrive in (a) Florence, you will find at the hotel a letter from (di) my agent. 7. Have you not heard him spoken of? 8. I have been here for two months, working<sup>2</sup> in the libraries. 9. Where are they? They are there outside, waiting for<sup>3</sup> you. 10. He ought to have spoken to you about it himself, instead of writing.

<sup>1</sup> Express this idea in the verb.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *a* with the infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> Use a relative clause instead of a participle.

### LESSON 30. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION (continued)

*Study 92, 75-124 [omitting verbs marked Rare or Poetical, and forms in parentheses].*

#### EXERCISE 30

1. *Inflect the present tenses of* muovere *and* sorgere.

2. *Translate:* mordono, mossa, moverà, nasce, nacquero, nascosto, nascondevo, negletto, offendendo, offesi, perso, perderebbe, pioveva, pioverà, prenda, preso, proteggono, professe, redenta, raso, rendevano, ridi, risero, risponda, risposi, rotti, ruppero, scendemmo, scorgiamo, scriva, scrissi, scosso, sorge, spargeva, sporgono, successe, teso, torce, torse, ucciderà, vinco, vinsero, volsi, volgerebbe.

3. *Translate into Italian:* they were moving, he was born, hide, we are losing, it is raining, let them take, he laughed, they answered, broken, write, he shook, they rise, she spent, it happens, it would kill, I shall conquer, let him live, they turned.

4. *Study these sentences:* 1. Se te li prèsto, quándo me li renderái? 2. La scodèlla gli cádde per tèrra e si ruppe in tre pèzzi. 3. Sólì quèlli che gli vívono da prèssò sánno che égli è ánche più buòno che

gránde. 4. Scríva un pô' mëglio; altriménti non potránno lêggere niènte. 5. Succêsse úna páusa, róttá finalménte da un grído di terróre. 6. Non si lásci víncere dall' íra. 7. Il còdice fu scrítto, páre, vêrso la fíne del Trecênto. 8. È succêssu quéllo che pur trôppo non potéva non succêdere. 9. L' Itália nácque cóme náscono tútte le nazióni nuòve, dall' enèrgia déi méno che pórtà al destíno l' inèrzia déi piú. 10. Bèn perdúto è conosciúto.

5. *Translate into Italian:* 1. He put it on the table, but someone has moved it. 2. Let's stand under that tree while it rains. 3. If he had moved it, it would have fallen. 4. There the mountains rise from the waters of the lake. 5. Goldóni and Alfieri lived in the 18th century. 6. They are all running: what has<sup>1</sup> happened? 7. He shook his head, smiling, and turned<sup>2</sup> toward the door. 8. When I spoke to him about it, he laughed, and did not answer me. 9. In what year was Dante born? 10. They don't think he will live<sup>3</sup> if he remains here.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by the proper form of *essere*.

<sup>2</sup> Put the proper reflexive pronoun before the verb.

<sup>3</sup> Use the subjunctive.

## LESSON 31. CONJUNCTIONS

### *Study 78.*

### EXERCISE 31

1. *Give the meanings of these conjunctions:* a méno che non, acciocchè, affinchè, ánze, avánti che, benchè, chè, dacchè, dáto che, dónde, dovúnque, finchè, finchè non, méntre, neánche, ossía, perchè (*with indicative*), perchè (*with subjunctive*), per quánto, poichè, práma che, purchè, púre, qualúnque, quási, sebbène, se non che, siccóme.

2. *Study these sentences:* 1. Seguitò a filáre finchè il fíglío del re non se ne fu andáto. 2. L' avrèbbe potúto fáre, purchè l' avésse volúto. 3. Mólti sóno e i difètti e i perícóli di úna tále decisióne. 4. I giòrni passávano sènza che il pádre gliéne parlásse. 5. Non l' avrèbbe mái sapúto, se non che le si spedì da Miláno un giornále cólla notízia. 6. Lo conoscévo néi giòrni che éra qui a visitáre

la nôнна. 7. Non ci aiúta púnto, ánzì c' impedísce. 8. Le súa espressiôni, per quánto fóssero fôrti, non êrano esageráte. 9. Mi dispiácque di non avér-la vedúta prîma che partísse. 10. Non voléva nemméno vedérlo, non che parlárgli.

3. *Translate into Italian:* 1. They were sitting in the parlor while I was writing the letters. 2. Who is going there today? Either he or I. 3. They received them as if they were old friends. 4. He remained at the window until he heard them knock. 5. We will pardon him provided he will promise to (*di*) give it back to us at once. 6. I found it without difficulty, although he had hidden it with the greatest care. 7. When you see him, do me the favor to (*di*) give him these tickets. 8. I should like to speak to him before he goes. 9. Since they are worth what they cost, why don't you buy them? 10. I sent you<sup>1</sup> here in order that you should study, not in order that you should waste my money.

<sup>1</sup> Use the second person singular in translating this sentence.

## LESSON 32. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION (continued)

*Study 92, 127-133.*

### EXERCISE 32

1. *Translate:* bévano, bévve, berà, avrêbbe bevúto, beviámo, bée, chiêsto, chiêsi, chiedéte, chiederánno, chiêda, chiedévano, condurrêi, condótto, condússero, condúca, condúci, sóno condótti, nocéva, nuôce, nôcque, pónga, pósto, pósi, poniámo, porrà, póne, traévano, trássero, trággono, trarrémo, avévano trátto, trágga.

2. *Translate into Italian:* they would drink, he was drinking, I drank, let him drink, let us ask, he will have asked, they asked, we were asking, I conducted, let them conduct, he has conducted, I was conducting, it will harm, they harmed, we put, put, they are putting, they will put, he dragged, we should drag, I have dragged.

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Quándo avrà sêi ánni lo porrémo a scuôla. 2. Se bevésse un pô' di quel víno, gli farêbbe bêne. 3. Il fumáre trôppo gli ha nociúto graveménte. 4. Non le sa negáre quel

che gli chiêde.<sup>1</sup> 5. Soffrì lúnghi ánni di úna malattía di cuôre che finalménte lo trásse álla môrte. 6. Ho sête: dámmi da bére. 7. Vorrêi chiêderle úna vacánza di pôchi giòrni, finchè mi rimétta un pô' in salúte. 8. Finì col dârsi per vînto, e col concêdere tútto quánto gli êra richiêsto. 9. Quésto mi ha indótto a riconóscere in lúi l' autóre dèlle mie disgrázie. 10. Tútte le stráde condúcono a Róma.

<sup>1</sup> The personal object of *chiêdere* is indirect.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Drink a little water. 2. They are putting it in the other corner of the room. 3. Clouds of smoke were rising, and they were dragging everything out of the house. 4. I put it there because I found it there: don't move it. 5. Go and ask him why he didn't read what I wrote. 6. If you stay to dinner, we'll take<sup>1</sup> you to the theatre this evening. 7. The house was placed so that one could see between the hills as far as the river. 8. If you had asked me for<sup>2</sup> it, I should have given it to you. 9. Then he drew his sword and took<sup>3</sup> his place at the head of his company. 10. He put his hands on my shoulders and asked me if I had been a good boy.

<sup>1</sup> Use *menâre*.    <sup>2</sup> *Chiêdere* means 'to ask for.'    <sup>3</sup> Use *prêndere*.

## LESSON 33. THE SUBJUNCTIVE

*Study 77 through (f).*

### EXERCISE 33

1. *Study these sentences:* 1. Sênta: potrêbbe prestârmi per quálche giòrno úna ventína di líre? 2. Bisognáva che ne trovássero un áltro perfêttaménte símile a quéllo che si êra perdúto. 3. Ci fáccia sapére quále difficoltà ci sía. 4. È il poêta piú clássico e nondiméno il piú modérno che ábbia l' Itália. 5. Quánto mále ci ha fáttö! Non l' avéssimo mái vísto! 6. Se avésse úno che si prendésse cûra di lúi, ánce lúi potrêbbe far mæglio. 7. Lêgga, scríva, non sía mái ozióso, non chiêda mái a nessúno, non spêri che nel súo lavóro. 8. Non vi è piú alcúno che crêda álle lóro stórie. 9. Ti sía sêmpre nêlla ménte che il compiacêrsi déi máli dégli áltri è crudeltà. 10. Se vuôle andáre,

se ne váda; per me, ci avrêi piacére. 11. Êra un' idêa di cú parláva in ógni conversazióne che riguardásse il súo avveníre. 12. Fóssi tu qui con me! Pur trôppo bisógna óra che tu rimánga in città. 13. Bádi di non parlármí piú cosí; e básti l' avvíso per quêsta vólta. 14. Si mostrò prônto a tútto ciò che potésse piacére ai superióri. 15. Domandò álla sêrva se si potésse parláre al padrône. 16. Divísero la città in sêi párti, ed elêssero dódici cittadíní che la governássero. → 17. Nessúno se ne meravígli: êra da aspettársi. 18. Benchè non vi sía niênte che ábbia l' ária di êssere esageráto, tútto il líbro è úna terribile accúsa. 19. Se ci va spêso, è perchè ci si mángia bêne. 20. Parrêbbe impossíbile a chi non lo conoscésse per quell' uòmo che è.

2. *Translate into Italian:* 1. If he were here, perhaps he would be able to give us a little light. 2. He asked me if I were really a count. 3. This is the first and only pleasure I have had since I have been here. 4. It would be enough to (*per*) convince one who had not sworn to remain in the dark. 5. They wanted to give her a name that should recall her aunt's affection. 6. Russia is the only country in (*di*) Europe that he hasn't visited. 7. They are things that happen often, although they seem impossible. 8. Did they ask you if you had read his last novel? 9. Wherever I go, that scene is ever before my eyes. 10. They had placed a guard at the only door by which he could have escaped.

### LESSON 34. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION (continued)

*Study 92, 134-148.*

#### EXERCISE 34

1. *Translate:* còglie, còlse, coglierémo, scélga, scélto, scegliévi, sciogliémmo, sciogliêndo, avrêbbe sciólto, tólgonò, torrà, torrêi, giungéte, giúnsero, sóno giúnti, piáangi, piánse, piangerò, pínge; píngano, píngeránno, spêgne, spênsè, spegnéva, spínga, avéva spínto, spínsero, strétto, stríngono, stringémmo.

2. *Translate into Italian:* they gather, we gathered, I was choosing, let them choose, we have taken, I shall take, you are

weeping, I wept, they extinguish, we shall extinguish, you were pushing, I had pushed, we are bound, bind.

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Il sóle che caláva tingéva di rósso le ácque del lágo. 2. La Cappèlla Sistína fu dipínta da Michelángelo tra il 1508 e il 1512. 3. Gli afferrò la dêstra e gliéla strínse con fôrza, ma al ritiráre la máno la víde tínta di sángue. 4. Tútti quélli con cúì éra strétto d' amicízia se n' andárono, lasciándolo sólo sólo. 5. Non si sapéva se ríderne o piángerne; infátti alcúni piánsero, sorridêdo però fra le lágrime. 6. Se si potéssero parláre úna vólta, le difficoltà sarébbéro súbito sciólte. 7. Érano giúnti a un tal púnto che bisognáva o víncere o pèrder ógni còsa. 8. Stáva inginocchióni cólle máni giúnte in átto di preghiêra. 9. Gli tòlse di máno il denáro sêza nemméno ringraziárlò. 10. L' imperatóre, poêta égli stéssò, protêsse i poêti e li accòlse e onorò nêlla súa córte.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Among all the employees they chose him as the most industrious. 2. Then they looked at each other, and began to weep. 3. Go and gather some<sup>1</sup> flowers for the vases in the parlor. 4. When we arrived, the sacristan was putting out the lights. 5. Take<sup>2</sup> those papers from the table and put them on the desk. 6. In ancient times cities were surrounded by walls and ditches. 7. He pushed me into (a) this business, and now he ought to help me. 8. They were crying like children; she was going from one to the other, trying to (di) comfort them. 9. We found ourselves compelled to (a) ask him for it. 10. He might have surrendered: he chose to (di) die.

<sup>1</sup> Use the partitive construction.

<sup>2</sup> Use *togliere*.

## LESSON 35. PREPOSITIONS

### *Study 79.*

### EXERCISE 35

1. *Give the meaning of these prepositions:* accánto a, al di là di, attórno a, circa, cóntro, déntro di, diêtro, dirimpêtto a, dópo, eccêtto, fin da, fíno a, fuòri di, innánzi, intórno a, lúngo, óltre, quánto a, rispêtto a, secóndo, síno a, sótto, su, tra, tránne.

2. *Study these sentences:* 1. Se vuòl rimanére con nói, ha da fáre quel che vòglio ío. 2. Óra le ha compráto úna mácchina da cucíre. 3. Ce lo giurò per quánto avéva di piú cáró. 4. Da allóra in pòi vísse da buòn cristiáno. 5. Lo so per cêrto che ôggi non gli hánno dáto da mangiáre. 6. Al di là del fiúme si vedévano délle vécchie tórri medioeváli. 7. Ci si ammalávano a centináia per giòrno. 8. C'êra úna vólta un bël fanciúllo dái capélli bióndi e dágli ôcchi azzúrri, che avéva fra i diêci e i dódici ánni. 9. Lúi, poverétto, stáva zítto a guardármí, ed ío gli parlái con un tóno da fargli corággio. 10. Álla pórta délla chiêsa c'êra úna vécchia che accattáva da chi entráva; il ragázso andò da lêi, e le diêde metà del sáo páne.

3. *Translate into Italian:* 1. They want to have (*fáre*) lunch before the others. 2. You can't persuade him to vote against the government. 3. We'll be at your house in an hour and a half. 4. They will arrive on (*con*) the 5.20 train. 5. He went to France in 1872, and remained there for three or four years. 6. Go tell<sup>1</sup> them they'll have to do without me. 7. His arrival was greeted by all with an exclamation of surprise. 8. I begged my father to take<sup>2</sup> me to the city to see my cousins. 9. They have been living in Venice for six months. 10. You ought to do something for him instead of letting him suffer so.

<sup>1</sup> Use *dire*, the personal object of which is indirect.

<sup>2</sup> Use *menáre*.

## LESSON 36. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

*Study 92, 149-163.*

### EXERCISE 36

1. *Translate:* áprono, aprì, sóno apêrti, còpra, copêrse, copríte, offrímmo, offrirà, offêrsi, soffríi, hánno soffêrto, soffrirêi, costruívano, digerísce, esauríto, è státo sepólto, cucívo, émpiono, émpi, émpiere, muôia, morránnò, è môrto, ségui, seguì, seguirêi, spárve, sparíscono, sparirà.

2. *Translate into Italian:* we opened, they would open, cover, I covered, let us offer, he has offered, he is suffering, you will suffer, she was sewing, he died, I shall die, following, let us follow, it would disappear, they disappeared.

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Se la túa pátria avrà bisógno di te, ôffrile te stéssu. 2. Le finêstre déllo stúdio si áprono all' êst. 3. Pôssa tu godére quant' ío ho soffêrto e sôffro. 4. Tútti i fígli le êrano môrti, l' úno dópo l' áltro, ed êra rimásta sóla sóla al móndo. 5. Gli appárve in sógno un fantásma che lo minacciáva di môrte. 6. Lúi proseguíva il lavóro sênz a badáre a ciò che facévano gli áltri. 7. Di quêsto si tratterà nel capítolo seguênte. 8. Ha la spòsa rícca, ma morrêbbe piuttòsto che chiêderle un sòldo. 9. Compiúti gli stúdi, féce un lúngo viággio per l' Eurôpa. 10. Muôr giòvane colúi che al ciêlo è cáro.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. If the window isn't open, do me the favor to open it. 2. He died last night at half past eleven. 3. Those are old customs that now are disappearing. 4. Let's offer them to her, and if she doesn't want them we'll keep them for ourselves. 5. The king is dead: long<sup>1</sup> live the king! 6. She covered her face with her hands and wept. 7. You have written a song that will not die. 8. I opened the window and called them, but they didn't hear me. 9. If I suffered as they have suffered, I should die. 10. They are building a theatre on the site of those old shops.

<sup>1</sup> Omit this word in translating.

## LESSON 37. THE SUBJUNCTIVE (continued)

*Study 77 (g), (h), (i).*

### EXERCISE 37

1. *Study these sentences:*<sup>1</sup> 1. Páre che se ne síano scordáti affátto. 2. Bádi che non gli fácciano mále! 3. Se le dispiáce che lo fácciano gli áltri, non lo fáccia lêi stéssu. 4. Mì rincrésce che Lêi ábbia dovúto partíre sênz a vedérli. 5. Non permíse però che finísse così. 6. Còsa

<sup>1</sup> In several of these sentences the *che* clause should be replaced, in translation, by an infinitive construction.



pênsi tu che ci sía da fáre? 7. Non sapéva che s' êra proibíto che i forestiéri visitássero la fortézza? 8. Non potrai veníre dománi? Avrêi bisógno che tu mi aiutássi. 9. Il pónte par che ségni il púnto in cúi il fiúme éntra nel lágo. 10. Non si può non sospettáre che l' ábbiano sapúto. 11. Paréva ci fóssero dégli spíriti invisíbili. 12. Tème che gli si pòssa tógliere quel che ha guadagnáto. 13. Vóglia il ciélo che non vènga un giòrno in cúi si pènta di non avérmi ascoltáto. 14. Láscono ch' ío gli párli ancóra úna vòlta prima che se ne váda! 15. Chi vuòi che le cómpri, délle scárpe cosí? 16. Ho létto quélle págine col più vívo interésse, e vorrêi che le potéssero lègger tútti. 17. Se vuòle che gli si pòrti rispètto, dève imparáre a rispèttáre gli áltri. 18. L' ho sentíto negáre che la víta per sè stéssa sía desiderábile. 19. Pagáre e pòi pagáre, perchè i nòstri soldáti vádano a moríre nell' África, non si può pretèndere che piáccia al pòpolo italiáno. 20. Non possiámo permétttere che cèrti púnti del Mediterráneo síano prési ed occupáti da colóro che un giòrno potrèbbero êsserci nemíci.

2. *Translate into Italian:* 1. I am surprised that you do not understand it. 2. I know they wanted me to stay<sup>1</sup> until tomorrow. 3. It seemed to us that they were afraid that someone would recognize them. 4. He begged them to give<sup>1</sup> him a little bread. 5. It may be believed that he has earned in this way more than 2000 *lire*. 6. He was ashamed that they should think that he had not been content. 7. Yesterday I heard that he was a little better. 8. Doesn't it seem to you that he is asking too much? 9. He ordered them all to be<sup>1</sup> silent. 10. I hope he'll give you all you want.

<sup>1</sup> Use a *che* clause, turning the preceding personal pronoun into a subject.

## LESSON 38. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION (continued)

*Study 92, 164-168.*

### EXERCISE 38

1. *Translate:* díssero, dicéva, è státo détto, di', dícano, dirésti, salì, sálga, salíte, salívano, sálgo, salirà, vièni, verrà, vénne, sóno venúti, vènga, verrèi, udírono, ôde, udiránno, êsca, uscíamo.

2. *Translate into Italian:* you say, he said, say, they are ascending, I ascended, let us ascend, they came, I shall come, she has come, they hear, hearing, we had heard, he is going out, they went out, I should go out.

3. *Study these sentences:* 1. Quando uscí di cámera, mía mádre, già alzáta, mi aspettáva per díirmi addío. 2. Che còsa vuól díre quésta paròla? 3. Ci díce che sóno venúti tútti, e che rimarránno fíno álle dièci. 4. I prêzzi délle cáрни sóno già salíti assái. 5. Morì benedicéndo i figli e i figli de' fígli suòi. 6. Rifiutò nondiméno l' aiúto che gli veníva offérto. 7. Êrano sêmpre sevêri con lúi, sênza mái dírne il perchê. 8. Pòi le vénne in mén-te che avéva proméss-o di restituírglieli il giòrno dópo. 9. I fátti che siámo venúti narrándo bástano a dimostráre la falsità dell' accúsa. 10. Dímmi con chi prátichi e ti dirò chi sêi.

4. *Translate into Italian:* 1. They come and they disappear. Where do they all go? Tell me, do they all die? 2. I'm afraid they won't come if it rains. 3. If it's he, call him, and tell him I should like to speak to him. 4. He is much better now; he goes out almost every day. 5. Let them tell him to come at once. 6. They told me that he had arrived Monday. 7. They came; I heard them open the door; they went up; and then they disappeared. I went out, but they had gone away. 8. Did they tell you when they would come? 9. If he had told you that, what would you have done? 10. I came, I saw, I conquered.

## LESSON 39. ADVERBS AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

*Study 80-91 inclusive.*

### EXERCISE 39

1. *Give the meanings of these indefinite pronouns and adjectives:* alcúno, álttri, altrúi, ambedúe, cêrto, chi, chicchessía, ciaschedúno, ciascúno, méno, nessúno, nùlla, ognúno, parécchi, per quánto, qualchecòsa, qualcúno, qualúnque, si, un tále.

2. *Study these sentences:* 1. Sentì qualchedúno che piangéva lì déntro. 2. Se fóssi Lèi, gli scriverèi un' áltra vólta, benchè non Le ábbia mái rispósto. 3. Sentíva un gran desidêrio di fáre qualcôsa di stráno e di terríbile. 4. L' úno e l' áltro me n' hánno dáto parôla. 5. Ci andrémo insiême, non è véro? Non mi díca di no. 6. Côsa fáí lì? O che vuòi bruciár la cása? 7. Ed êcco che le apparì súlla sôglia un non so che di biánco. 8. L' ha cambiáto tútto, ed óra sì che mi piáce! 9. Non si va in quel luôgo se non per vedére la fontána. 10. Quêsto móndo è fátto a scále, chi le scénde e chi le sále.

3. *Translate into Italian:* 1. Do you go there oftener now? What? Yes, every eight or ten days. 2. I shall be there too, day after tomorrow, and I shall stay the whole week. 3. We saw certain things there that we didn't like at all. 4. I should never have believed that they would both leave me. 5. Take care that no one sees you start. 6. Each of you ought to give him something. 7. One must respect the rights of others. 8. One can't say, though, that such a work isn't worth anything. 9. I have but two, but if you want one of them, here it is. 10. He must have known them well; he has lived there for several years.

## LESSON 40. REVIEW

### EXERCISE 40

1. *Give the plural of each of the following combinations:* l' animále grígio, il mío bráccio, del caffè nuôvo, nell' êtasi (*fem.*), pôca facoltà, dálla túa famíglia, la máno biánca, l' operáio eróico, l' orígine mística, quel páio, il gran pálco, col vécchio pôrco, la radíce profónda, l' última ríga, al bël rôgo, lo schérzo cómico, súllo scôglio pittoréscio, il buôn síndaco, il telegrámma lúngo, il súo zío.

2. *Translate:* lo ápra, l' avrémmo, me lo chiêsero, li còglie, condóttovi, ve lo conóbbe, gliélo dêvono, ce lo díá, dítele, lúi lì ha divísi, êccotelo, n' êsce, gliélo féce portáre, vi fóste, ci piánse, lo lèssi lóro, l' avéva môsso, muôiano lóro, vi nácque, offêrtoglielo, vi sarêbbe párso, dovréste piángerne, lo potémmo vedére, me lo rése, li rúppero, si vorrêbbe sapére, le scríssi, avrêbbe dovúto

seguírli, ci stéste, l' avránno strétto, lèi tacute, lo tēnga lèi, li tráe, ci vánno, érano venúti, ci vídero, ci ha vissúto.

3. *Translate into Italian:* will you be there?, *they* chose it, we had come, he was dying there, give it to him, will they go there?, he has been killed, do you know it?, do you know him?, they would have lost it, they ought to have opened it, he could not persuade him, it pleased him, I put it there, they made me read it, *we* shall remain there, it seemed to them, they have seen us, tell it to *me*, they wish it.

4. *Study these sentences:* 1. Mi rispóse di sì,<sup>1</sup> e che ci avrèbbe móltto piacére. 2. Lúi piangéva piangéva, e gli álttri stávano zítte a guardálo. 3. Sedévano attórno álla távola, impaziènti che si servísse la colazióne. 4. Mórto, le párve assái piú gránde e buóno che non le fósse mái párso vívo. 5. Finalménte riuscì a fárselo restituíre. 6. Gli abítánti si rifugiávano su per i mónti, portándovi quel che avévan di mēglío.<sup>2</sup> 7. Nel succēdersi dégli avveniménti in mēzzo ai quáli veníva innalzáto al sòglio, párve manifestársi la máno délla Provvidēza. 8. Prevedéva di dovérsene tornáre a cása, di lì a pòchi giòrni, pòvero com' éra venúto. 9. Che mólti di quéi tēmi esistēs-sero nēlla poesía piú antíca, ci páre pienamēte dimostráto. 10. Se li pērdo, che sarà di me? 11. Le stáva davánti, quási aspettásse che gli dicēsse d' andársene. 12. Quēste pòche págine póste in princípío serviránno di introduzióne a tútto il líbro. 13. Decíse di sentíre tranquillamēte ciò che állo zío piacēsse d' aggiúngere. 14. Si trásse dal díto l' anéllo mágico, e se lo míse in bócca. 15. Adēsso le spiegherò, mēglío ch' ío non facéssi allóra, che còsa vogliámo fáre. 16. Non pòsso non fárllo, nè vorrèi, ánche potēdo, non fárllo. 17. Úna società che si fórmi cosí dēve finíre con l' ésser compósta di ribélli. 18. Parlerémo práma di lúi, non perchè égli sía il piú antíco, ma perchè è il piú importánte. 19. Nor si érano mái accórti délle occhiáte di ammirazióne con cúi lúi li guardáva. 20. Alcúni contadíni, credēdo che cercásse déi tesóri, e persuási che avésse già quálche còsa di prezíoso in tásca, gli si avvicinárono per accertársene.

<sup>1</sup> *di sì*, 'that he would.'

<sup>2</sup> *quel che avévan di mēglío*, 'the best of their belongings.'

5. *Translate into Italian:* 1. He told me that he had desired it for many years. 2. I should not have believed that you had spoken of it to him. 3. If I'm not mistaken, we shall be there in a few minutes. 4. I am surprised that they haven't called you yet. 5. I know him only by (*di*) sight; I have seen him several times in the Public Gardens. 6. The prisoner has<sup>1</sup> escaped and has hidden himself in the wood; the peasants are protecting him. 7. I was sure of it, although her face did not betray any surprise. 8. Did they tell you when they would come to your house? 9. We could have given it to you, if we had known that you wanted it. 10. It isn't impossible that he has seen it, but I don't believe so.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by the proper form of *èssere*.

## LESSON 41. OLD AND POETIC FORMS

*Study section 3 (f) on p. 7, the second footnote on p. 11, the second footnote on p. 17, section 44 (a), the first footnote on p. 35, section 48 (e), the footnote on p. 39, section 63 (d), section 68, the forms given in section 92 in parentheses and footnotes, the verbs numbered 23 and 169, and those among nos. 24-125 that are marked Rare or Poetical; also the verbs gíre and íre given on p. 94.*

## EXERCISE 41

1. *Give the modern prose equivalents of:* lo giòrno, i capéi, tái re, ne<sup>1</sup> párla, mel díce, nol crédo, sen va, amería, parlería, parlâro, parlerêbbono, parlôe, párle, parlâr, cómpo,<sup>2</sup> sentío, fénno, féste, fáce, diêro, áve, avéa, aviêno, ággia, arà, êi, cággiano, dêe, dênno, il véggio, vòlsi, puôte, pônno, poría, ênno, súto, sête, fóra, fóro, fía, chiêggo, côrre, tôrre, piágne, vêgna.

<sup>1</sup> Do not regard this *ne* as meaning 'of it.'

<sup>2</sup> Do not regard this form as present indicative.

2. *Study these lines:*

1. Or fía ch' èi vègna sólo? Áhi, mèglio fóra!
2. Udrássi allór chi puôte il ver narráre.
3. Môrte êmmi il gíre, e il rimanér m' è môrte.
4. Stávvi sêmpre — nol sái? — cúi stárvi líce.
5. Tòrmeli crédi? Chi diétti tal fôrza?

6. La pátria amâr; liêti per lêi morîro.
7. Il véggio, o pármî, cói fratêi veníre.
8. Qual fuggitívo non vorría mostrármi.
9. "O felíci costór!" paréane díre.
10. "Lasciár ti dêbbo" pòi sen gía cantándo.

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES IN PRONUNCIATION

### A

Acácia, accecáre, acciáio, acquaiuôlo, aggiúngere, áhi, allégro, amicízia, archibúgio, artigliería, bicchiêre, bigliétto, Boccáccio, Boiárdo, bugía, búio, buôi, canzóne, Cardúcci, cascággini, Castiglióne, cavaliería, Cellíni, céncio, cêntottantôtto, cérchio, Checcháina, chiáccchiere, chiaroscúro, Chiôggia, cicatríce, cíglio, cinquecênto, Civitavêcchia, cògliere, corággio, corridóio, costituzionále, crescêndo, cugíno, cuócere, dolcézza, dóppio, dúnque, echeggiáre, facciónè, fasciáre, fazzolétto, fiócchi, físchio, flôscio, Fogazzáro, Francésco, fruscìo, fuorchè, gáio, ghiáccio, ghiáia, Ghirlandáio, giacíglio, ginôcchio, giôia, Giórgio, Girgênti, giudízio, grígio, guái, guêrra, Guído Guinizèlli, hái, hánno, ho, ignôbile, incôgnito, inginocchiátio, inscioglíbile, iridescênza, Itália, laggiù, larghézza, lenzuôlo, letteratúra, líscio, luccichìo, Machiavèlli, menzógna, merciáio, Michelángelo Buonarrôti, minchionería, negôzio, Niccolò, noiáltri, occhiácci, ocêano, orécchio, ossía, Pagliácci, Palêrmo, paziênza, Petrárca, piázza, pieghevolézza, Pintorícchio, Poliziáno, Pollaiuôlo, Pozzuôli, può, quácquero, quaggiù, quégli, ricchézza, richiamiámo, risuscitáre, ruôta, Sacchétti, sbêrcio, scégliere, schermísce, schérzo, schiamázzo, sciaguráto, sciògliere, sciupacchiáre, scricchiolò, sdraiáto, sdrúcciolo, Sfôrza, sghêrro, Sicília, singhiózzo, slánciano, squarciagóla, stizzísce, súdicio, tázza, tréccia, tribù, úggia, uguále, uôvo, usciámo, vêcchio, viággio.

### B

Un mío amíco raccontáva úna scêna curiósa álla quále êra státo presênte in cása di un giúdice di páce in Miláno, mólti ánni fa. Lo avéva trováto tra dúe litigánti, úno déi quáli peroráva caldaménte la súa cáusa; e quándo costúi êbbe finíto, il giúdice gli dísse: "Avéte ragióne."

“Ma, signór giúdice,” disse súbito l’ áltro, “lêi mi dêve sentíre ánche me, práma di decídere.”

“È trôppo giústo,”<sup>1</sup> rispóse il giúdice, “díte pur su,<sup>2</sup> che v’ ascólto atténtaménte.”

Allóra quéllo si míse con tánto piú impégno a far valére la súa cáusa, e ci riuscì così bène che il giúdice gli dísse: “Avéte ragióne ánche vói.”

C’ éra lì accánto<sup>3</sup> un súa bambíno di sêtte o ôtto ánni, il quále, giocándo pián piáno con non so qual balôcco, non avéva lasciáto di stáre ánche atténto álla discussióne, e a quel púnto, alzándo un visíno stupefátto, esclamò: “Ma bábbo, non può êssere che ábbiano ragióne tutt’ e dúe.”

“Hái ragióne ánche tu,” gli dísse il giúdice.

MANZÓNI.

<sup>1</sup> È trôppo giústo, ‘That’s only fair.’

<sup>2</sup> díte pur su, ‘go ahead.’

<sup>3</sup> accánto, ‘in the room with them.’

## C

Che sía il Píncio nell’ óra che sul ponénte colór d’aráncio si dipínge la gigantésca ómbra di San Piêtro e del Vaticanó, non c’ è língua che pòssa díre. È un incánto, un’ êstasi, un sógno, è un confúso viavái d’ immênsi pensiêri, è un tumúlto di memòrie grandióse e di speránze arcáne, in cúi la ménte si pêrde, cóme in un máre sêza confíni. Guardándo il Gianícólo e Mònte Mário, che stánno in fáccia, par di vedére nel fòndo dell’ angústa valláta passár silenziósi i sêcoli fra le nébbie délla séra, e un brívído còrre per le ôssa, cóme se da quel fòndo si rizzássero, tacitúrni e cúpi, gli spêtttri dei grándi, che résero temúta e sácrá álle gênti quêsta têrra fatále. Quêsto píccolo spázio, che lo sguárdo abbráccia sêza fácca, è il púnto piú stòrico di tútto il móndo. Tútta la civiltà antíca s’ è condensáta fra quêsti còlli, e di qui, risalêndo il Tévere, s’ è distésa a conquistár la maggiór pártte délla têrra conosciúta. Di qui móssero gli esêrciti invasóri, qui ne fúrono celebráti i triónfi, di qui si propagárono le lèggi e la língua che

fécero di gran pártè dëllo stermináto impêro un pôpolo sólo. Quándo pòi i vînti si ribellárono, la non vînta regína soggiogò còlle speránze di un' áltra víta tútti colóro che rícusávano il sùo domínio in quéstà; e in nóme di Crísto risolvè l' impêro cadúto. Poichè le fúrono strappáte di máno le ármí, regnò disarmáta: ricuperò con un áltero vessillo la coróná perdúta, nè fu méno gránde e potén-te di príma. E l' embléma di quéstá stòria, nòdo déi tēmpi anterióri e déi succes-sívi, è là sòtto gli òcchi: un obelísco egiziáno, portáto in Róma da-gl' imperatóri románi e sormontáto dálla cróce, compēndia la stòria di tútta la civiltà.

GABELLI.

### NOTE ON READING ITALIAN VERSE

In reading Italian verse the verbal stress is the same as in prose. There is no such artificial shifting of the stress as in Latin scansion.

Two adjacent vowels in the same word are usually to be pronounced as belonging to the same syllable, the voice gliding quickly from the first vowel to the second. They are however to be pronounced as belonging to separate syllables (1) when the first is *a*, *e*, or *o* and the second is stressed; (2) when the first of the two vowels is the last stressed vowel of the line; (3) in some other cases (there is one instance in Exercise E, line 4: *trionfále*).

Two vowels standing one at the end of a word and the other at the beginning of the next word and not separated by a mark of punctuation are usually to be pronounced, also, as belonging to the same syllable. (There are no exceptions in these exercises. Exceptions occur when the first of the two vowels is stressed or is immediately preceded by a stressed vowel, and in some other cases.) If the two vowels are different, the voice glides quickly from the first to the second; if they are identical, they are pronounced as a single long vowel.

Two adjacent vowels separated by a mark of pronunciation are to be pronounced as belonging to separate syllables; though as a matter of technical versification they are arbitrarily reckoned as belonging to the same syllable, unless they are of one of the types referred to as exceptional.



## D

Lúngo la stráda védi su la siêpe  
 rídere a mázzi le vermíglie bácche:  
 nei cámpi aráti tórnano al presêpe  
 tárde le vácche.

Viên per la stráda un pôvero che il lênto  
 pássso trạ fôglie strídule trascína:  
 nei cámpi intuôna una fanciúlla al vênto:

Fióre di spína! . . .

PÁSCOLI.

Line 1. *su la*: the prepositions which normally contract with a following definite article are in verse often uncontracted.

4. *tárde* is a predicate adjective used with adverbial force: 'slowly.'  
*intuôna*: see section 59 (b).

8. *Fióre di spína*: these are the first words of a peasant song.

## E

Liêvi e biánche a la plága occidentále  
 Ván le núbi: a le víe ríde e su 'l fôro  
 Úmido il ciêlo, ed a l' umán lavóro  
 Salúta il sól, benígno, trionfále.

Lêva in rôseo fulgór la cattedrále  
 Le mílle gúglie biánche e i sánti d' ôro,  
 Osannándo irraggiáta: intórno, il côro  
 Brúno de' fálchi ágita i grídi e l' ále.

Tál, pôi ch' amór co 'l dólce ríso vía  
 Ráse le núbi che gravârmi tánto,  
 Si rilêva nel sól l' ánima mía,

E moltéplice a lêi sorríde il sánto  
 Ideál de la víta: è un' armonía  
 Ógni pensiêro, ed ógni sênso un cánto.

CARDÚCCI.

Line 2. 'l is a form of *il* often used in verse.

10. *Ráse* is a past absolute used with the force of a present perfect: 'has swept.' — *gravârmi*: see section 68 (d).



# ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains all Italian words appearing in exercise sections involving translation from the Italian and all words appearing in Exercises B-E on pp. 150-153, with the following exceptions: articles, cardinal and ordinal numerals, possessive and personal pronouns, and words occurring only in the following exercise sections: Ex. 28 sect. 2 Ex. 30 sect. 2, Ex. 31 sect. 1, Ex. 34 sect. 1, Ex. 35 sect. 1, Ex. 36 sect. 1, Ex. 39 sect. 1. The meanings of all words occurring in these sections are given in the portions of the Grammar assigned for the lessons in question. The irregular verb forms occurring in Exercises B-E (except the forms of *avere* and *essere*) are separately entered here.

The position of the secondary stress is indicated only in words in which it falls upon an open e or o.

Nouns ending in o are masculine and those ending in a are feminine, unless indication to the contrary is given.

## A

**a**, to, toward, at, in, on, upon, for, by, of; **a fáre**, doing, if one does; **al fáre**, on doing, when one does.

**abbracciáre**, to embrace.

**abitánte**, *m.*, inhabitant.

**ábito**, coat.

**accadére**, to happen.

**accánto**, — **a**, beside.

**accattáre**, to beg.

**accertársi**, to make certain.

**accôgliere**, to welcome.

**accôrgersi di**, to notice.

**accúsa**, accusation.

**ácqua**, water.

**addío**, good-by.

**adêssó**, now.

**affáre**, *m.*, affair.

**affátto**, entirely.

**afferráre**, to seize.

**affétto**, affection.

**Áffrica**, Africa.

**aggiúngere**, to add.

**agitáre**, to agitate, wave.

**ah**, ah; **ah sì?**, is that so?

**âhi**, ah.

**aiutáre**, to help.

**aiúto**, help.

**âla**, wing.

**âlbero**, tree.

**alcúno**, some; *pron.*, anyone.

**alloggiáre**, to lodge.

**allóra**, then; **da — in pôi**, thereafter.

**alméno**, at least.

**âlto**, high, tall; **in —**, high up.

**altriménti**, otherwise.

**âltro**, other; **l' úno e l' —**, both.

**alzáre**, to raise; **alzáto**, up.

**amáre**, to love, be fond of.

**Amêrica**, America.

**amicízia**, friendship.

**amíco**, friend.

**ammalársi**, to fall sick.

**ammirazióne**, *f.*, admiration.

**amóre**, *m.*, love.

**ânche**, also, too, even, at the same time.

**ancóra**, still, yet, again, even, more.

**andáre**, to go; **andársene**, to go off *or* away; **va fáto cosí**, it must be done so.

**anêllo**, ring.

**angústo**, narrow.

**âníma**, soul.

**âño**, year; **di dúe âñni**, two years old; **avére dúe âñni**, to be two years old.

**anteriôre**, former.

**antíco**, ancient, old.

**ânzi**, even, rather, on the contrary.

**apparíre**, to appear.

**appéna**, scarcely, as soon as.

**applaudíre**, to applaud.

**apríre**, **aprírsi**, to open.

**aráncio**, orange.

**aráre**, to plough.

**arcâno**, secret.

**âria**, air; **avér l' —**, to seem.

**Ariôsto**, Ariosto.

**ârmí**, *f. pl.*, arms.

**armonía**, harmony.

**arriváre**, to arrive, get; — **a**, to reach.

**ascoltáre**, to listen, listen to.

**aspettáre**, to wait, wait for, expect.

**aspêtto**, aspect, appearance.

**assái**, enough, very, considerably, much.

**assênte**, absent.

**atténtamênte**, attentively.

**attênto**, attentive, careful.

**átto**, act, attitude.

**attórno**, — **a**, around.

**auguráre**, to wish.

**aurôra**, dawn.

**austriáco**, Austrian.

**automôbile**, *m.*, automobile.

**autóre**, *m.*, author.

**autúnno**, autumn.

**avánti**, forward, come in.

**avére**, to have, possess, hold; **ho da**, I have to, I must. *Other idioms in which avére appears are registered only under the other words concerned.*

**avvenimênto**, event.

**avveníre**, to happen; *n. m.*, future.

**avvertíre**, to warn.

**avvicinársi a**, to approach.

**avvísó**, warning.

**avvocáto**, lawyer.

**azióne**, *f.*, action.

**azzúrro**, blue.

## B

**bábbo**, papa.

**bácca**, berry.

**badáre**, to notice, take care, pay attention.

**balôcco**, toy.

**bambíno**, child, small boy.

**bastáre**, to be enough, suffice.

**battágliá**, battle.

**báttere**, to beat, strike.

**baúle**, *m.*, trunk.

**bêllo**, beautiful, fair, handsome, pretty, fine.

**benchè**, although.

**bêne**, well; *n. m.*, good thing, happiness; **far —**, to do good.

**benedíre**, to bless.

**benígnó**, benign.

**beníssimo**, very well.

**bére**, to drink.

**biáncó**, white.

**biasimáre**, to blame, condemn.

**bicchiêre**, *m.*, glass.

**bigliétto**, ticket, bill.

**biliárdo**, billiards.

**bióndo**, blond, golden.

**bisognàre**, to be necessary.  
**bisógno**, need; **avér — di**, to need.  
**bócca**, mouth.  
**bottóne**, *m.*, button.  
**bráccio**, arm.  
**brívido**, shudder.  
**bruciàre**, to burn.  
**brúno**, brown, dark.  
**búio**, dark; *n.*, darkness.  
**buôno**, good.

## C

**cadére**, to fall.  
**caffè**, *m.*, coffee.  
**calàre**, to sink, set.  
**caldaménte**, warmly, eagerly.  
**cáldo**, hot, warm.  
**cambiàre**, to change.  
**cámera**, room.  
**caminétto**, fireplace.  
**camíno**, chimney.  
**cámpo**, field.  
**cantàre**, to sing.  
**cánto** (1), song.  
**cánto** (2), corner.  
**capéllo**, hair.  
**capíre**, to understand.  
**capitolàre**, to capitulate, surrender.  
**capítolo**, chapter.  
**cappélla**, chapel.  
**cappéllo**, hat.  
**caráttere**, *m.*, character.  
**cárico**, laden.  
**cárne**, *f.*, meat.  
**cáro**, dear.  
**cárta**, paper.  
**cása**, house, home.  
**cattedrále**, *f.*, cathedral.  
**cattívo**, bad.  
**cáusa**, cause, case.

**cêdere**, to yield.  
**celebràre**, to celebrate.  
**centèsimo**, centime.  
**centináio**, hundred.  
**cêntro**, centre.  
**cercàre**, to seek, search, look for, try.  
**cêrto**, certain; **per —**, for a certainty.  
**che**, *conj.*, that, because, and, than; **fátto — êbbe**, when he had made; **êcco —**, suddenly; **non —**, to say nothing of; **se non —**, if . . . not, but; **non . . . —**, only; **pôî —**, when; **sì — è buôno**, it's very good indeed; **o —**, *used without translatable force to introduce a question.*  
**che**, *pron.*, what, what a, who, which, that, when; — **côsa**, what; **ciò —, quéllo —**, what, that; **un non so — di buôno**, something good, a certain goodness.  
**chi**, who, he who, one who, if any-one; — . . . —, some . . . others; **di —**, whose.  
**chiamàre**, to call; **cóme si chiàma?**, what is the name of?  
**chiáro**, clear, bright.  
**chiàve**, *f.*, key.  
**chiêdere**, to ask.  
**chiêsa**, church.  
**chiúdere**, to close, shut.  
**ci**, here, there, in it; *often pleonastic.*  
**ciêco**, blind; *n.*, blind man.  
**ciêlo**, sky, heaven.  
**ciò**, that; — **che**, what, that.  
**cioè**, that is.

città, city.  
 cittadino, citizen.  
 civiltà, civilization.  
 clássico, classic.  
 co 'l, *poetic*, = col.  
 códice, *m.*, manuscript.  
 cògliere, to gather.  
 colazione, *f.*, lunch.  
 cêlle, *m.*, hill.  
 colóre, *m.*, color; — d' arancio, orange-colored.  
 colóro, those.  
 colúi, he.  
 combáttere, to fight.  
 cóme, how, as, like.  
 cominciáre, to begin.  
 compagnía, company.  
 compendiáre, to sum up.  
 compiacérsi, to take pleasure.  
 compíre, to complete, finish.  
 compliménto, compliment.  
 compórre, to compose.  
 compráre, to buy.  
 con, with, by, in, on, to.  
 concêdere, to concede, grant.  
 condensáre, to condense, concentrate.  
 condúrre, to lead.  
 confêtti, *m. pl.*, candy.  
 confíne, *m.*, limit.  
 confóndere, to confuse.  
 conoscêza, acquaintance.  
 conóscere, to know, make the acquaintance of, recognize.  
 conquistáre, to conquer.  
 consíglío, counsel.  
 contadíno, peasant.  
 contentáre, to content, satisfy.  
 continuáre, to continue.  
 contínuo, continual.  
 cóntro, — di, against.

conversazióne, *f.*, conversation.  
 corággio, courage; da far —, encouraging.  
 côro, choir.  
 coróna, crown.  
 coronáre, to crown.  
 córrere, to run, overrun.  
 córte, *f.*, court.  
 cortesía, courtesy.  
 côrto, short.  
 côsa, thing, what; che —, what; ha quáche — di buôno, there is something good about it.  
 così, so, such.  
 costáre, to cost.  
 côsto, cost.  
 costóro, they.  
 costúi, he.  
 crédere, to believe, think.  
 créscere, to grow, increase.  
 cristiáno, Christian.  
 Crísto, Christ.  
 cróce, *f.*, cross.  
 crudeltà, cruelty.  
 cucíre, to sew; mácchina da —, sewing-machine.  
 cugína, cousin.  
 cugíno, cousin.  
 cúí, whom, which, to which, he to whom.  
 cuôre, *m.*, heart.  
 cúpo, gloomy.  
 cúra, care.  
 curióso, curious.

## D

da, from, by, for, with, to, of, as, like, such as to; da lontáno, in the distance; da prêso, near; da mangiáre, something or anything to eat.

**Dánte**, *m.*, Dante.  
**dáre**, to give, devote; — **del**, to call; **dársi per vînto**, to give in.  
**datáre**, to date.  
**davánti**, — **a**, before, in front of.  
**decídere**, to decide.  
**decisióne**, *f.*, decision.  
**denáro**, money.  
**déntro**, within, in.  
**desiderábile**, desirable.  
**desideráre**, to desire.  
**desidêrio**, desire.  
**destíno**, destiny.  
**dêstra**, right hand, right.  
**dêve**, *3rd sing. pres. ind. of dovere*.  
**di**, of, about, with, from, by, in, to, than, as; **dáre del**, to call; **díre di sì**, to say 'yes'; **al di là di**, beyond; **del páne**, some bread.  
**diávolo**, devil.  
**diêtro**, — **a**, behind.  
**difêtto**, defect.  
**diffícile**, difficult.  
**difficoltà**, difficulty, trouble.  
**dimenticáre**, to forget.  
**dimostráre**, to demonstrate, prove.  
**dipíngere**, to paint.  
**díre**, to say, tell; — **di sì**, to say 'yes'; **volér** —, to mean.  
**disarmáto**, unarmed.  
**discussióne**, *f.*, discussion.  
**disgrázia**, misfortune.  
**dispiacére**, to displease; **mi dispiáce**, I'm sorry, I don't like.  
**dísse**, *3rd sing. past abs. of díre*.  
**distêndere**, to distend; *refl.*, to reach out.  
**distêso**, *pp. of distêndere*.  
**distínguere**, to distinguish.  
**díte**, *2d pl. inv. of díre*.  
**díto**, finger.

**divertíre**, to divert, amuse.  
**divídere**, to divide.  
**divíno**, divine.  
**dólce**, sweet.  
**dolére**, to pain.  
**domandáre**, to ask, ask for.  
**dománi**, tomorrow.  
**doménica**, Sunday.  
**domínio**, dominion.  
**dôнна**, woman.  
**dóno**, gift.  
**dópo**, after, afterward, since.  
**dormíre**, to sleep.  
**dóve**, where.  
**dovére**, to owe, be obliged; **dêvo**, I am to, I have to, I must; **dovrêi**, I ought to.  
**dúro**, hard.

## E

**e**, and, both; **le dúe e diêci**, ten minutes past two; **più . . . e più**, the more . . . the more.  
**ècco**, here is, there is; — **che**, suddenly.  
**ed**, and.  
**egiziáno**, Egyptian.  
**êh**, ch.  
**elêggere**, to elect.  
**emblêma**, *m.*, emblem.  
**energía**, energy.  
**entráre**, to enter, go in, get in, come in.  
**esageráre**, to exaggerate.  
**esáme**, *m.*, examination.  
**esclamáre**, to exclaim.  
**esêrcito**, army.  
**esístere**, to exist.  
**espressióne**, *f.*, expression, remark.  
**esprímere**, to express.  
**êssere**, to be, become; *refl.*, to be.

**êst**, *m.*, east.

**êstasi**, *f.*, ecstasy.

**età**, age.

**Eurôpa**, Europe.

## F

**facchîno**, porter.

**faccia**, face; **di** —, **in** —, opposite.

**fácil**, easy.

**fálco**, falcon.

**falsità**, falseness.

**fálso**, false.

**fáme**, *f.*, hunger.

**fanciúlla**, girl.

**fanciúlo**, boy, child.

**fantásma**, *m.*, phantom.

**fáre**, to do, make, have, let, take, say, be, act, serve as; *refl.*, to become, get; **lâscia** — **a me**, leave it to me; **dólce** — **niênte**, sweet idleness; **sul** — **di**, toward;

**fa**, ago. *Other idioms in which*

**fáre** *appears are registered only*

*under the other words concerned.*

**fatále**, fateful.

**fatíca**, fatigue, difficulty.

**fátto**, fact.

**favóre**, *m.*, favor.

**febbraio**, February.

**fêbbre**, *f.*, fever.

**fécero**, *3rd pl. past abs. of fáre.*

**felíce**, happy.

**feríre**, to wound.

**férmo**, firm, certain.

**férro**, iron.

**figlio**, son.

**filáre**, to spin.

**filosofía**, philosophy.

**finalménte**, finally, at last.

**finchè**, as long as, until; — . . .

**non**, until.

**fine**, *f.*, end.

**finêstra**, window.

**finger**, to feign; **fínto**, fictitious.

**finíre**, to finish, end; — **coll' an-**

**dáre**, finally to go.

**fino a**, until.

**fióre**, *m.*, flower.

**fioríno**, florin, *an obsolete coin*

*worth about \$2.50.*

**Firênze**, *f.*, Florence.

**fiúme**, *m.*, river.

**fôglia**, leaf.

**fólto**, thick.

**fondáre**, to found.

**fóndo**, depth, trough, hollow, basis.

**fontána**, fountain.

**forestiêre**, *m.*, foreigner, stranger.

**formáre**, to form.

**forníre**, to furnish; — **di**, to give.

**fôro**, forum, market place.

**fôrse**, perhaps.

**fôrte**, strong.

**fortézza**, fort.

**fortunáto**, fortunate.

**fôrza**, force, strength; **con** —, hard.

**fotografía**, photograph.

**fra**, between, among, amid,

through.

**francése**, French.

**frásca**, bush.

**fráse**, *f.*, sentence.

**fratêllo**, brother.

**fréddo**, cold; **fáre** —, to be cold.

**frétta**, haste.

**frútto**, fruit.

**fuggíre**, to flee.

**fuggitívo**, fugitive.

**fulgóre**, *m.*, glow.

**fumáre**, to smoke.

**fuôco**, fire.

**fuorchè**, except.



## G

gallería, gallery.  
 garantíre, to guarantee.  
 gènte, *f.*, people, nation.  
 gentíle, gentle, polite, kind.  
 già, already.  
 giacére, to lie.  
 giállo, yellow.  
 Gianícolo, Janiculum.  
 giardíno, garden.  
 gigantésco, gigantic.  
 ginôcchio, knee.  
 giocáre, to play.  
 giòia, joy.  
 giornále, *m.*, journal, newspaper.  
 giòrno, day; *per* —, daily.  
 giòvane, young; *n. m.*, young man.  
 Giovánni, *m.*, John.  
 giòvine, young.  
 giovinézza, youth.  
 giráre, to whirl.  
 gíre, *poetical*, to go; *gírsene*, to go away.  
 gíta, trip, excursion.  
 giudicáre, to judge.  
 giúdice, *m.*, judge, justice.  
 giúngere, to join, clasp; — *a*, to reach.  
 giuráre, to swear.  
 giústo, just, fair.  
 godére, to enjoy.  
 governáre, to govern.  
 gránde, great, large, big; *n. m.*, great man; *fáre un — fréd-do*, to be very cold.  
 grandióso, grand.  
 graváre, to weigh down, oppress.  
 graveménte, gravely, seriously.  
 grázia, favor; *pl.*, thanks.  
 grído, cry.  
 guadagnáre, to earn, gain, win.

guánto, glove.

guardáre, to look, look at, watch  
 gúglia, pinnacle.

## I

idêa, idea.  
 ideále, *m.*, ideal.  
 iêri, yesterday.  
 illúdere, to deceive.  
 illustríssimo, excellency.  
 immênso, immense.  
 imparáre, to learn.  
 impaziénte, impatient.  
 impedíre, to hinder.  
 impégno, pledge, earnestness.  
 imperatóre, *m.*, emperor.  
 impêro, empire.  
 importánte, important.  
 impossíbile, impossible.  
 in, in, at, to; *da allóra in pòi*, thereafter.  
 incánto, enchantment.  
 inchíno, bow.  
 incontráre, to meet.  
 indoráre, to gild.  
 indúrre, to induce, lead.  
 inêrzia, inertia.  
 infátti, in fact.  
 ingegnêre, *m.*, engineer.  
 Inghiltèrra, England.  
 inginocchióni, kneeling.  
 innalzáre, to raise.  
 insegnáre, to teach.  
 insiême, together.  
 interessánte, interesting.  
 interêsse, *m.*, interest.  
 intonáre, to intone, start singing.  
 intórno, round about.  
 introduzióne, *f.*, introduction.  
 inútile, useless.

invasóre, *m.*, invader; *adj.*, invading.

invéce, instead.

invêrno, winter.

invisibile, invisible.

íra, anger.

irraggiáto, radiant.

irrequiêto, anxious.

Itália, Italy.

italiáno, Italian.

## L

là, there; *al di là di*, beyond.

lágo, lake.

lágrima, tear.

lasciáre, to leave, let, fail; *lascia fáre a me*, leave it to me.

látte, *m.*, milk.

lavoráre, to work.

lavóro, labor, work.

légge, *f.*, law.

lêggere, to read.

lênto, slow, quiet, gentle.

lêttera, letter.

leváre, to raise, rise.

lezióne, *f.*, lesson.

lì, there; *di lì a*, within.

libertà, liberty, freedom.

líbro, book.

lícere, *poetical*, to be permitted.

liêto, glad.

liêve, light.

língua, tongue, language.

líra, lira, *a coin worth about 20 cents*.

litigánte, *m.*, litigant.

lontáno, distant, far; *da —*, in the distance.

lúme, *m.*, light.

lunedì, Monday.

lúngo, *adj.*, long.

lúngo, *prep.*, along.

luôgo, place.

## M

ma, but.

mácchina, machine.

mádre, *f.*, mother.

maggióre, greater.

mágico, magic.

mái, never, ever; *non . . . —*, never.

maláto, sick.

malattía, sickness, trouble.

mále, badly, ill; *n. m.*, harm, ill; *far —*, to hurt.

mandáre, to send.

mangiáre, to eat.

maniêra, manner.

manifestáre, to manifest.

máno, *f.*, hand.

máre, *m.*, sea.

María, Mary.

Mário, *proper name*.

matíta, pencil.

mattína, morning.

mázzo, cluster.

mêdico, doctor.

medioevále, mediaeval.

Mediterráneo, Mediterranean.

mêglio, better, best.

méla, apple.

memôria, memory.

menáre, to lead, take.

méno, less; *le dúe — diêci*, ten minutes of two; *non potére a — di non*, not to be able to help; *i —*, the minority.

mén-te, *f.*, mind; *veníre in —*, to occur.

mén-tre, while.

**meravigliáre**, to surprise.  
**mercáto**, market.  
**mescoláre**, to mingle.  
**mése**, *m.*, month.  
**metà**, half.  
**méttere**, to put, set; *refl.*, to begin.  
**mêzzo**, half; **in — a**, amid; **fino a —**, until the middle of; **le dúe e —**, half past two.  
**mêzzogiórno**, noon; **dópo —**, P. M.  
**míca: non . . . —**, not.  
**Michelángelo**, Michelangelo.  
**miglióre**, better, best.  
**Miláno**, *f.*, Milan.  
**minacciáre**, to threaten.  
**minaccióso**, threatening.  
**míse**, *3rd sing. past abs. of*  
**méttere**.  
**misterióso**, mysterious.  
**modêrno**, modern.  
**móglie**, *f.*, wife.  
**moltéplice**, manifold.  
**moltíssimo**, very much, a great deal of.  
**mólto**, much, very much; *adv.*, much, very; **far — mále**, to hurt badly.  
**moménto**, moment.  
**móndo**, world; **non sapére in che — si sía**, not to know where one is, to be completely bewildered.  
**montáre**, to mount, go up.  
**mónte**, *m.*, mountain, mount.  
**moríre**, to die.  
**mormorío**, murmur.  
**môrte**, *f.*, death.  
**môssero**, *3rd pl. past abs. of*  
**muôvere**.  
**mostráre**, to show; *refl.*, to appear.  
**múcchio**, pile.

**muôvere**, to move, start.  
**múro**, wall.

## N

**Nápoli**, *f.*, Naples.  
**narráre**, to narrate, tell.  
**náscere**, to be born *or* formed.  
**Natále**, *m.*, Christmas.  
**nazóne**, *f.*, nation.  
**ne**, thence; **andársene**, to go off *or* away.  
**nè**, nor, neither; **non . . . nè . . .**  
**nè**, neither . . . nor.  
**neánche**, **non . . . —**, not even.  
**nébbia**, mist.  
**necessário**, necessary.  
**negáre**, to deny, refuse.  
**nemíco**, enemy.  
**nemméno**, **non . . . —**, not even.  
**néro**, black.  
**nessúno**, no one; **non . . . —**, not anyone.  
**néve**, *f.*, snow.  
**nído**, nest.  
**niénte**, **non . . . —**, nothing, not anything; **dólce far —**, sweet idleness.  
**no**, no, not.  
**nôdo**, knot, link.  
**nóme**, *m.*, name.  
**non**, not, no; **— . . . che**, — . . . **se —**, only; **— che**, to say nothing of; **se —**, except; **se — che**, if . . . not, but; **più . . . che —**, more than; **— potére —**, not to be able to avoid *or* fail; **— potére a méno di —**, not to be able to help; **un — so che di buôno**, something good, a certain goodness; **— so quále**, some . . . *or* other.

nondiméno, nevertheless.  
 nônna, grandmother.  
 notízia, notice, news.  
 nôtte, *f.*, night.  
 núbe, *f.*, cloud.  
 núlla, non . . . —, nothing.  
 número, number.  
 nuôcere, to hurt.  
 nuôvo, new; **che c' è di** —?,  
 what's the news?

## O

o, *conj.*, or, either.  
 o, *interj.*, O; **o che**, *used without*  
*translatable force to introduce a*  
*question.*  
 obbligáre, to oblige.  
 obelísco, obelisk.  
 occasióne, *f.*, occasion.  
 occhiáli, *m. pl.*, glasses.  
 occhiáta, glance.  
 ôcchio, eye.  
 occidentále, western.  
 occupáre, to occupy.  
 ôdio, hatred.  
 offríre, to offer.  
 ôggi, today.  
 ôgni, every.  
 ôh, oh.  
 ómbra, shadow.  
 ombréllo, umbrella.  
 onoráre, to honor.  
 onóre, *m.*, honor.  
 ôpera, work.  
 operáio, workman.  
 opinióne, *f.*, opinion.  
 óra, *adv.*, now; **or** —, just.  
 óra, *n.*, hour, time.  
 ôrfano, orphan.  
 ôro, gold.  
 osannáre, to sing hosanna.

ôsso, bone.  
 ozióso, idle.

## P

páce, *f.*, peace.  
 pádre, *m.*, father.  
 padróne, *m.*, master.  
 pagáre, to pay.  
 página, page.  
 palázso, palace.  
 pállido, pale.  
 páne, *m.*, bread.  
 panière, *m.*, basket.  
 parére, to seem, appear.  
 parláre, to speak.  
 parôla, word.  
 páрте, *f.*, part.  
 partíre, to depart, leave; — **di**, to  
 leave.  
 partíta, match, game.  
 passáre, to pass.  
 pássso, step.  
 patérno, of one's parents.  
 pátria, fatherland.  
 paúra, fear.  
 páusa, pause.  
 paziênza, patience.  
 peccáto, sin; *interj.*, too bad.  
 péna, trouble.  
 pénna, pen.  
 pensáre, to think.  
 pensiêro, thought.  
 pentírsi, to repent.  
 per, for, through, along, in, on, as,  
 as for; — **quánto sía buôno**,  
 good as it is; **stáre** —, to be  
 about to.  
 péra, pear.  
 perchê, why, because, in order  
 that; *n. m.*, reason.  
 pêrdere, to lose.

**perfêttamênte**, perfectly, exactly.  
**perícôlo**, danger.  
**perméttere**, to permit, allow.  
**però**, however, though.  
**peroráre**, to plead.  
**persuadére**, to persuade, convince.  
**pésce**, *m.*, fish.  
**pêzzo**, piece.  
**piacére**, to please; *n. m.*, pleasure,  
 favor; **avér** —, to be glad; **mi**  
**piáce**, I like.  
**piângere**, to weep, cry, weep for.  
**piáno**, smooth, slow; *adv.*, softly,  
 quietly.  
**picchiáre**, to knock.  
**pícolo**, little, small.  
**piêde**, *m.*, foot; a **piêdi**, on foot.  
**piênamênte**, fully.  
**piêno**, full.  
**pietà**, pity.  
**Piêtro**, Peter.  
**pigliáre**, to take, catch.  
**Píncio**, Pincian Hill.  
**pistôla**, pistol.  
**pittóre**, *m.*, painter.  
**pittúra**, painting.  
**più**, more, most, longer, again; —  
 . . . **e** —, the more . . . the more;  
**non** . . . —, not, no, not any;  
**i** —, the majority.  
**piuttôsto**, rather.  
**plága**, sky.  
**po'**, *abbreviated form of pôco*.  
**pochíssimo**, very little.  
**pôco**, little, a little.  
**poesía**, poetry, poem.  
**poêta**, *m.*, poet.  
**pôi**, then; **da allóra in** —, there-  
 after; — **che**, when.  
**poichè**, after.  
**pólso**, pulse.

**ponênte**, *m.*, west.  
**pónte**, *m.*, bridge.  
**pêpolo**, people.  
**pôrre**, to put, place, send.  
**pôrta**, door.  
**portáre**, to carry, bring, take,  
 show.  
**pôssa**, *3rd sing. pres. subj. of*  
**potére**.  
**possíbile**, possible.  
**pósto**, place.  
**potênte**, powerful.  
**potére**, to be able; **pôssô**, I can, I  
 may; **non** — **non**, not to be  
 able to avoid *or* fail; **non** —  
**a méno di non**, not to be able  
 to help.  
**poverétta**, poor woman.  
**poverétto**, poor fellow.  
**pôvero**, poor; *n.*, poor man.  
**pránzo**, dinner.  
**praticáre**, to practice, associate.  
**preferíre**, to prefer.  
**preghiêra**, prayer, entreaty.  
**prêmere**, to press.  
**prêndere**, **prêndersi**, to take.  
**presentáre**, to present.  
**presênte**, present.  
**presêpe**, *m.*, stable.  
**prêssô**, **da** —, near.  
**prestáre**, to lend.  
**prêsto**, quickly, soon, early.  
**pretêndere**, to expect.  
**prevedére**, to foresee.  
**prezióso**, valuable.  
**prêzzo**, price.  
**príma**, first, before; — **di**, — **che**,  
 before.  
**princípio**, beginning.  
**profóndo**, deep, low.  
**proibíre**, to forbid.

promettere, to promise.  
 pronto, ready, quick.  
 propagare, to spread abroad.  
 proseguire, to continue.  
 proteggere, to protect, patronize.  
 provvidenza, providence.  
 pubblicare, to publish.  
 punto, point; *adv.*, at all.  
 può, *3rd sing. pres. ind. of potere*.  
 purchè, provided that, if only.  
 pure, yet, just; — troppo, unfortunately.

## Q

quadro, picture.  
 qualche, some, a few; *ha — còsa di buono*, there is something good about it.  
 qualcheduno, someone.  
 qualcosa, something.  
 quále, which, what, as; *il —*, who, which; *non so —*, some . . . or other.  
 qualità, quality.  
 quando, when.  
 quánto, how much, as much, as much as, all that, that, as; *per — sía buono*, good as it is.  
 quáto, quarter.  
 quási, almost, as if.  
 quéllo, that, that one, the one, the, he; — *che*, what, that.  
 quèsto, this, this one.  
 qui, here; *di —*, hence.

## R

raccòlta, collection.  
 raccontare, to narrate, tell, tell about.  
 rádere, to shave, sweep.  
 ragázza, girl.

ragázzo, boy.  
 ragióne, *f.*, reason; *avér —*, to be right.  
 ráse, *3rd sing. past abs. of rádere*.  
 re, *m.*, king.  
 regalare, to give.  
 regína, queen.  
 regnare, to reign.  
 rëndere, to render, give back, make.  
 résero, *3rd pl. past abs. of rëndere*.  
 restare, to stay.  
 restituire, to give back.  
 ribellársi, to rebel.  
 ribèlle, *m.*, rebel.  
 ricchézza, riches, wealth.  
 ricco, rich.  
 ricévere, to receive, get.  
 richiédere, to ask.  
 riconóscere, to recognize.  
 ricuperare, to recover, regain.  
 ricusare, to refuse, deny.  
 ridere, to laugh.  
 rifiutare, to refuse.  
 rifugiársi, to take refuge.  
 riguardare, to look again, regard, concern.  
 rilevare, to raise again; *refl.*, to rise again.  
 rimanere, to remain, be left, be.  
 rimettere, to replace; *refl.*, to gain.  
 rincrescere, to displease; *mi rincresce*, I'm sorry.  
 rincresciménto, regret.  
 ringraziare, to thank.  
 ripetere, to repeat.  
 risalire, to go up.  
 ríso, smile.  
 risollevare, to raise again.  
 rispettare, to respect.

**rispêtto**, respect.  
**rispôndere**, to answer, reply.  
**rispôse**, *3rd sing. past abs. of rispôndere*.  
**ritârdo**, delay; **in** —, late.  
**ritirâre**, to draw back.  
**riuscîre**, to go out again, succeed.  
**rivedére**, to see again.  
**rizzâre**, to raise; *refl.*, to rise.  
**Rôma**, Rome.  
**româno**, Roman.  
**românzo**, novel.  
**rômpere**, to break.  
**rôsa**, rose.  
**rôseo**, rosy.  
**rôssso**, red.  
**rotôndo**, round.

## S

**sâcro**, sacred.  
**salîre**, to go up.  
**salôtto**, parlor.  
**salutâre**, — **a**, to greet.  
**salûte**, *f.*, health.  
**sângue**, *m.*, blood.  
**sâno**, sane, safe.  
**sânto**, holy; saint.  
**sapére**, to know, find out, know how, be able; **far** —, to tell; **non** — **in che môn-do si sîa**, not to know where one is, to be completely bewildered; **un non so che di buôno**, something good, a certain goodness; **non so quâle**, some . . . or other.  
**scâla**, stair.  
**scârpa**, shoe.  
**scêna**, scene.  
**scêndere**, to go down.  
**sciôcco**, fool; **da** —, foolishly.

**sciôgliere**, to untie, remove.  
**sciôpero**, strike; **fare** —, to strike.  
**scodêlla**, bowl.  
**scôpa**, broom.  
**scopâre**, to sweep.  
**scordârsi di**, to forget.  
**scôrso**, last.  
**scrivanîa**, desk.  
**scrîvere**, to write.  
**scuôla**, school.  
**scûro**, dark.  
**se**, if, whether; **se non**, except; **se non che**, if . . . not, but; **non . . . se non**, only.  
**sêcolo**, century.  
**secôndo**, according to.  
**sedére**, to sit; **sedûto**, sitting.  
**sêggiola**, chair.  
**segnâre**, to mark.  
**seguênte**, following.  
**seguîre**, to follow.  
**seguitâre**, to follow; — **a**, to keep on.  
**sêmplice**, simple.  
**sêmpre**, always.  
**sénno**, wisdom.  
**sensaziône**, *f.*, sensation.  
**sênso**, sense.  
**sentîre**, to feel, hear, listen, listen to; **sentîte**, I say, tell me.  
**sênza**, — **che**, without.  
**sêra**, evening.  
**sêrva**, servant.  
**servîre**, to serve.  
**servitôre**, *m.*, servant.  
**sête**, *f.*, thirst; **avér** —, to be thirsty.  
**settimâna**, week.  
**sevêro**, severe.  
**sfôrzo**, effort.  
**sguâdo**, glance.

sì, yes, so; ah sì?, is that so?; sì  
 che è buono, it's very good  
 indeed.  
 siêpe, *f.*, hedge.  
 signôra, lady.  
 signôre, *m.*, lord, gentleman,  
 master, Mr.  
 silenziôso, silent, still.  
 sîmile, similar, like, such.  
 simpático, sympathetic, agreeable.  
 sincêro, sincere.  
 Sistîna, Sistine.  
 so, *1st sing. pres. ind. of sapêre.*  
 società, society.  
 soffrîre, to suffer.  
 soggiogâre, to subjugate.  
 sôglia, threshold.  
 sôglio, throne.  
 sôgno, dream.  
 soldâto, soldier.  
 sôllo, penny, cent.  
 sóle, *m.*, sun, sunlight.  
 solêre, to be wont.  
 sólo, alone, single, only.  
 soltânto, only.  
 sorêlla, sister.  
 sormontâre, to surmount.  
 Sorrênto, Sorrento.  
 sorrîdere, to smile.  
 sospettâre, to suspect.  
 sôtto, beneath.  
 spagnuôlo, Spanish; *n.*, Spaniard.  
 spaventâre, to frighten.  
 spázio, space.  
 spedâle, *m.*, hospital.  
 spedîre, to send.  
 sperânza, hope.  
 sperâre, to hope.  
 spêssso, often.  
 spêttro, spectre, ghost.  
 spiegâre, to explain.

spîna, thorn.  
 spîrito, spirit.  
 spôsa, wife.  
 spôso, bridegroom; *adj.*, engaged.  
 stamâne, this morning.  
 stânno, *3rd pl. pres. ind. of stâre.*  
 stanôtte, last night.  
 stânza, room.  
 stâre, to stand, be, stay, sit; —  
 per, to be about to.  
 stasêra, this evening.  
 stâto, state.  
 staziône, *f.*, station.  
 sterminâto, boundless.  
 stêssso, same, self.  
 stôffa, stuff, goods.  
 stôria, history, story.  
 stôrico, historic, historical.  
 strâda, street, road.  
 strâno, strange.  
 strappâre, to snatch, tear.  
 strétto, narrow.  
 strîdulo, harsh, rustling.  
 strîngere, to bind, press.  
 studênte, *m.*, student.  
 studiâre, to study.  
 stúdio, study.  
 stupefâtto, astonished.  
 stupêndo, fine.  
 su, up, on, upon.  
 súbito, at once; — che, as soon as.  
 succêdere, to succeed, follow,  
 happen; succêdersi, *n. m.*, suc-  
 cession.  
 successîvo, succeeding.  
 suôno, sound.  
 superiôre, superior.

## T

tacêre, to be silent or still.  
 tacitúrno, taciturn, silent.



**tále**, such, so.  
**tángo**, so much, as, so; — **più**, all the more.  
**tárdi**, late.  
**tádo**, slow.  
**tásca**, pocket.  
**távola**, table.  
**teátro**, theatre.  
**tedésco**, German.  
**telefonáre**, to telephone.  
**têma**, *m.*, theme.  
**temére**, to fear, be afraid.  
**têmpo**, time, weather; **tángo** —, so long.  
**tenére**, to hold; — **per fêrmo**, to be certain; — **vívo**, to keep up.  
**têrra**, earth, ground, land, world.  
**terribile**, terrible.  
**terróre**, *m.*, terror.  
**tesôro**, treasure.  
**têsta**, head.  
**Tévere**, *m.*, Tiber.  
**tíngere**, to tinge, stain.  
**tocáre**, to touch, feel.  
**tôgliere**, to take; — **a**, to take from.  
**tôno**, tone.  
**tornáre**, to return, go back, come back; **tornársene**, to come home.  
**tórre**, *f.*, tower.  
**tôrto**, wrong; **avér** —, to be wrong.  
**totále**, total.  
**tra**, between, through.  
**tranquillamênte**, calmly.  
**trárre**, to draw, bring, take.  
**trascináre**, to drag.  
**trattáre**, to treat.  
**tremáre**, to tremble.  
**trêno**, train.  
**trionfále**, triumphal.

**trióngo**, triumph.  
**tríste**, sad.  
**trôppo**, too, too much, very; **pur** —, unfortunately.  
**trováre**, to find.  
**tumúlto**, tumult.  
**túto**, all, everything; — **il**, the whole; **tútti e dúe**, both.

## U

**ubbidíre**, to obey.  
**uccêllo**, bird.  
**udíre**, to hear.  
**último**, last, latest.  
**umáno**, human, of man, kindly.  
**úmido**, wet.  
**uníre**, to unite.  
**unità**, unity, union.  
**università**, university.  
**úno**, one, some, someone; **l'** — e **l' áltro**, both.  
**uômo**, man.  
**úscio**, doorway, door.  
**uscíre**, to go out; — **di**, to leave.  
**útile**, useful, good.

## V

**vacánza**, vacation.  
**vácca**, cow.  
**vagóne**, *m.*, car.  
**valére**, to be worth; **far** —, to prove.  
**valígia**, valise, bag.  
**valláta**, valley.  
**van**, *3rd pl. pres. ind. of andáre*.  
**vaticáno**, Vatican.  
**vêcchia**, old woman.  
**vêcchio**, old; *n.*, old man.  
**vedére**, to see; **far** —, to show.  
**véndere**, to sell.  
**venerdì**, Friday.

Venêzia, Venice.

veníre, to come, be; — in ménte, to occur.

ventína: úna — di, twenty or so.

vênto, wind.

verde, green.

vermiglio, vermilion, red.

véro, true; non è — ?, *a request for assent, to be translated, according to the context, as am I not?, was he not? etc.*

vêrso, toward.

vessillo, banner.

vestíto, dress.

vi, there, to it, in it.

vía, way, street; *adv.*, away.

viággio, journey.

viavái, *m.*, coming and going, surging.

viên, *3rd sing. pres. ind. of veníre.*

vílla, villa.

villággio, village.

víncere, to win, vanquish, conquer, overcome; *dársi per vinto*, to give in.

víno, wine.

vínto, *pp. of víncere.*

virtù, *f.*, virtue.

visíno, little face.

vísita, visit.

visitáre, to visit.

víso, face.

vísta, sight, view.

víta, life.

vívere, to live.

vívo, alive, keen; *tenér —*, to keep up.

vízio, vice.

vóce, *f.*, voice.

volére, to will, be willing, wish, want, like, intend, decide, grant, think; — *díre*, to mean; *ci vuôle*, it takes; *côsa vuôle?*, never mind.

vôlta, time; úna —, once, once upon a time; *un' áltra —*, again.

volúme, *m.*, volume.

vóto, vote.

## Z

zío, uncle.

zítto, silent.

# ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains all English words appearing in exercise sections involving translation into Italian, except articles, cardinal and ordinal numerals, and possessive and personal pronouns.

Italian nouns ending in **o** are masculine and those ending in **a** are feminine, unless indication to the contrary is given.

Irregular Italian verbs are marked with a star.

## A

**able:** be —, potére.\*

**about,** (= *approximately*) círca;  
(= *around*) intórno a; — **it,** ne;

**be — to,** stáre \* per.

**according to,** secóndo.

**ache,** dolére.\*

**affection,** affétto.

**afraid:** be —, temére.

**after,** dópo; **day — tomorrow,**  
domán l' áltro.

**again,** ancóra.

**against,** cóntro; (*before a disjunctive pronoun*) cóntro di.

**agent,** fattóre, *m.*

**agreeable,** simpático.

**all,** tútto; **not . . . at —,** non . . .  
púnto.

**allude,** allúdere.\*

**almost,** quási.

**alone,** sólo.

**already,** già.

**although,** benchè.

**always,** sêmpre.

**among,** fra.

**amuse,** divertíre.

**ancient,** antíco.

**and, e; go —,** andáre \* a.

**another,** un áltro.

**answer,** rispóndere.\*

**any,** *adj.*, alcúno; **not . . . —,**  
non . . . nessúno; *pron.*, ne.

**anything,** quálcbe còsa; **not . . .**  
—, non . . . niènte.

**applaud,** applaudíre.

**apple,** méla.

**April,** apríle, *m.*

**arrival,** arrívó.

**arrive,** arriváre.

**as,** cóme, tánto, quánto: *see* 32;

**as soon as,** súbito che; **as far**  
**as,** fíno a.

**ascend,** salíre.\*

**ashamed:** be —, vergognársi.

**ask,** (*lesson 15*) domandáre; (*les-*  
*son 32 and later lessons*) chièd-  
dere \*; — **for,** chièdere.\*

**at, a; at last,** finalménte; **at least,**  
alméno; **at once,** súbito; **at**  
**his house,** da lúi; **not . . . at**  
**all,** non . . . púnto; **look at,**  
guardáre.

**aunt,** zía.

**automobile,** automóbile, *m.*

**autumn,** autúnno.

**away,** vía; **go —,** andársene.\*

## B

back, diètro; come or go —, tornàre; give —, restituìre.

bad, cattívo.

bag, valígia.

basket, panière, m.

be, èssere \*; (of health) stàre \*;

I am to, dêvo.\* Other idioms with be are registered only under the other words concerned.\*

beat, bálttere.

beautiful, bello.

because, perchè.

before, adv., prima; conj., prima che; prep., (of time) prima di; (of place) davánti.

beg, pregàre.

begin, cominciàre.

behind, diètro; (before a disjunctive pronoun) diètro a.

believe, crédere.

beside, accánto a.

best, adj., miglióre; adv., mēglio.

betray, tradíre.

better, adj., miglióre; adv., mēglio.

between, tra.

big, gránde.

bind, stríngere.\*

black, néro.

book, líbro.

born: be —, náscere.\*

both, tútti e dúe.

bow, inchíno.

boy, ragázzo.

brave, coraggióso.

bread, páne, m.

break, rómpere.\*

brick, mattóne, m.

bring, portàre.

broad, lárgo.

brother, fratèllo.

build, costruìre.\*

business, affàre, m.

but, ma; (= only) non . . . che.

button, bottóne, m.

buy, compràre.

by, da; (in special cases) di, per.

## C

call, chiamàre.

can: I —, pôsso.\*

care, cúra; take —, badàre.

carry, portàre.

cent, sóldo.

centre, cētro.

century, sècolo; see 39 (c).

certain, cēto.

cheek, guància.

child, fanciúllo.

choose, scégliere.\*

church, chièsa.

city, città.

close, chiúdere.\*

cloud, núvola.

coat, ábito.

coffee, caffè, m.

cold, fréddo.

color, colóre, m.

come, veníre\*; — back, tornàre; — in, entràre.

comfort, confortàre.

company, compagnía.

compel, costringere.\*

conduct, condúrre.\*

conquer, víncere.\*

consist, constàre.\*

content, contēto.

continue, continuàre.

convince, convíncere.\*

cook, cuócere.\*

corner, cánto.

cost, costáre.  
 count, cónte, *m.*  
 country, paése, *m.*  
 courage, corággio.  
 cousin, cugíno.  
 cover, copríre.\*  
 crowd, affolláre.  
 crude, crúdo.  
 cry, piángere.\*  
 custom, costúme, *m.*  
 cut, tagliáre.

## D

dark, scúro; (*lessons 25 and 33*)  
 búio.  
 day, giòrno; — after tomorrow,  
 domán l' áltro.  
 decide, decídere.\*  
 depart, partíre.  
 desire, *n.*, desidêrio.  
 desire, *vb.*, desideráre.  
 desk, scrivánfa.  
 die, moríre.\*  
 difficult, diffícile.  
 difficulty, diffícoltà.  
 dinner, pránzo.  
 disappear, sparíre.\*  
 ditch, fôssa.  
 divide, divídere.\*  
 do, fáre.\* *For do as auxiliary,*  
*see 54 (g).*  
 doge, dôge, *m.*  
 door, pôrta.  
 doubt, dúbbio.  
 down, giù; sit —, sedére.\*  
 drag, trárre.\*  
 draw, trárre.\*  
 dress, vestíto.  
 drink, bére.\*  
 duke, dúca, *m.*

## E

each, *adj.*, ógni; *pron.*, ognúno;  
 — other: *see 47, 2 and 51 (f).*  
 early, prêsto.  
 earn, guadagnáre.  
 easy, fácilc.  
 eat, mangiáre.  
 egg, uôvo.  
 either, o.  
 Emmanuel, Emanuêlc, *m.*  
 employee, impiegáto.  
 end, finíre.  
 enemy, nemíco.  
 English, inglése.  
 enjoy, godére.  
 enough, abbastánza; be —, ba-  
 stáre.  
 enter, entráre.  
 entreaty, preghiêra.  
 escape, scappáre.  
 Europe, Eurôpa.  
 even, ancóra; not . . . —, non  
 . . . nemméno.  
 evening, séra; this —, staséra.  
 ever, sêmpre.  
 every, ógni.  
 everything, tútto.  
 examination, esáme, *m.*  
 exclamation, esclamazióne, *f.*  
 exist, esístere.\*  
 explain, spiegáre.  
 express, esprímere.\*  
 extinguish, spêgnere.\*  
 eye, ôcchio.

## F

face, fáccia.  
 fall, cadére.\*  
 far, lontáno; as — as, fíno a.  
 father, pádre, *m.*

fatherland, pátria.

fault, cólpa.

favor, favóre, *m.*

fear, temére.

feel, sentíre.

few, a —, pòchi.

fight, combáttère.

finally, finalménte.

find, trováre.

fine, bello.

finger, díto.

finish, finíre.

first, *adv.*, príma.

flee, fuggíre.

Florence, Firénze, *f.*

flower, fióre, *m.*

follow, seguíre.\*

foot, piède, *m.*

for, per; — two years, dúe ánni,

da dúe ánni: *see* 79 (*c*); ask —,

chièdere\*; look —, cercáre;

wait —, aspettáre.

foreigner, forestiére, *m.*

France, Fráncia.

French, francése.

friend, amíco.

from, da; (*in special cases*) di.

fry, fríggerè.\*

full, pièno.

## G

gallery, gallería.

garden, giardíno.

gather, cògliere.\*

gentleman, signóre, *m.*

get, ricévere.

girl, ragázza.

give, dáre\*; — back, restituíre.

glasses, occhiáli, *m. pl.*

glove, guánto.

go, andáre\*; go away, andár-

sene\*; go back, tornáre; go

in, entráre; go out, uscíre\*;

go up, salíre.\*

good, buòno.

goods, stòffa.

government, govèrno.

gratitude, gratitúdine, *f.*

great, gránde.

greet, salutáre.

grieve, dolére.\*

ground, tèrra.

grow, créscere.\*

guarantee, garantíre.

guard, guárdia.

## H

habit, abitúdine, *f.*

half, *n.*, metà; *adj.*, mèzzo; —

past two, le dúe e mèzzo.

hand, máno, *f.*; right —, dèstra.

handkerchief, fazzolétto.

handsome, bello.

happen, succèdere.\*

happy, felice.

hard, *adv.*, fòrte.

harm, nuòcere.\*

hat, cappèllo.

have, avére\*; (*causative*) fáre\*;

(*expressing obligation*) dovére.\*

*For have as auxiliary, see* 54, 3.

head, tèsta.

health, salúte, *f.*

hear, sentíre; (*lesson* 38) udíre.\*

help, aiutáre; not to be able to —,

non potére\* a méno di non.

here, qui, ci: *see* 84; — is, éccc.

hide, nascóndere.\*

high, álto.

hill, còlle, *m.*

hold, tenére.\*

home, cása.

**honor**, onóre, *m.*  
**hope**, speráre.  
**hotel**, albérgo.  
**hour**, óra.  
**house**, cása; **at his** —, da lúi.  
**how**, cóme; — **much**, quánto.

## I

**idea**, idêa.  
**if**, se.  
**impossible**, impossíbile.  
**in**, in; (*with the name of a city*)  
 a; (= *within*) fra; (*in special cases*) di; **come or go in**, entráre; **in order that**, perchè;  
**in this way**, così.  
**industrious**, industrióso.  
**instead**, invéce.  
**interesting**, interessánte.  
**into**, in; (*in special cases*) a.  
**invade**, invádre.\*  
**Italian**, italiáno.  
**Italy**, Itália.

## J

**John**, Giovánni, *m.*  
**June**, giúgno.

## K

**keep**, tenére\*; — **still**, tacére.\*  
**key**, chiáve, *f.*  
**kill**, uccédre.\*  
**king**, re, *m.*  
**knock**, picchiáre.  
**know**, sapére\*; (= *be acquainted with*) conóscere.\*

## L

**lady**, signóra.  
**lake**, lágo.  
**large**, gránde.

**last**, último; **at** —, finalménte;  
 — **night**, stanótte; — **year**,  
 l' áнно scórso.  
**late**, in ritárdo.  
**latest**, último.  
**laugh**, rídere.\*  
**lawyer**, avvocáto.  
**lead**, menáre.  
**leaf**, fòglia.  
**least**: **at** —, alméno.  
**leave**, (*intransitive*) partíre; (*transitive*) lasciáre.  
**lend**, prestáre.  
**lesson**, lezióne, *f.*  
**let**, lasciáre. *For let as auxiliary, see the note on p. 115.*  
**letter**, lèttera.  
**library**, bibliotêca.  
**lie**, giacére.\*  
**life**, víta.  
**light**, *n.*, lúme, *m.*  
**light**, *vb.*, accéndere.\*  
**like**, *prep.*, cóme; — **a man**, da uómo.  
**like**, *vb.*, (*with an infinitive*) volére\*; **I like it**, mi piáce.\*  
**line**, línea.  
**little**, piccólo; **a** — (= *some*), un po' di; (= *somewhat*), un po'.  
**live**, vívere.\*  
**long**, lúngo.  
**look**, — **at**, guardáre; — **for**, cercáre.  
**lose**, pèrdere.  
**love**, amáre.  
**low**, profóndo.  
**lunch**, colazióne, *f.*

## M

**make**, fáre.\*  
**man**, uómo; **young** —, giòvane, *m.*

**manner**, *maniêra*.  
**market**, *mercáto*.  
**Mary**, *María*.  
**may**: I —, *pôso*.\*  
**Milan**, *Miláno, f.*  
**mile**, *míglío*.  
**minute**, *minúto*; **ten minutes past two**, *le dúe e dièci*; **ten minutes of two**, *le dúe méno dièci*.  
**mistaken**: **be** —, *sbagliársi*.  
**moment**, *moménto*.  
**monarch**, *monárca, m.*  
**Monday**, *lunedì*.  
**money**, *denáro*.  
**month**, *mése, m.*  
**more**, *più*.  
**morning**, *mattína*; **this** —, *stamáne*.  
**most**, *più*.  
**mother**, *mádre, f.*  
**mountain**, *montáгна*.  
**move**, *muôvere*.\*  
**Mr.**, *signór*.  
**much**, *mólto*; **how** —, *quánto*;  
**so** —, *tánto*; **too** —, *trôppo*;  
**very** —, *mólto*.  
**must**: I —, *dêvo*.\*

## N

**name**, *nóme, m.*  
**Naples**, *Nápoli, f.*  
**near**, *vicíno a*.  
**necessary**, *necessário*; **be** —, *bisognáre*.  
**never**, *mái*.  
**new**, *nuôvo*.  
**newspaper**, *giornále, m.*  
**night**, *nòtte, f.*; **last** —, *stanòtte*.  
**no**, *no*; — **one**, *nessúno*.  
**noon**, *mèzzogiórno*.

**not**, *non*.  
**novel**, *románzo*.  
**now**, *óra*.

## O

**obliged**: **be** —, *dovére*.\*  
**o'clock**: **two** —, *le dúe*.  
**of**, *di*; **of it**, **of him**, **of them**, *ne*;  
**ten minutes of two**, *le dúe méno dièci*.  
**off**, *vía*; **take** —, *leváre*.  
**offer**, *offríre*.\*  
**often**, *spéso*.  
**old**, *vècchio*.  
**on**, *su*; (*in special cases*) *con*.  
**once**, *úna vólta*; **at** —, *súbito*.  
**one**, *úno*; (*as indefinite subject*)  
**si**; **no** —, *nessúno*; **other** —,  
*áltro*; **that** —, **the** —, *quéllo*;  
**this** —, *quésto*; — **who**, *chi*.  
**only**, *adj.*, *sólo*; *adv.*, *soltánto*.  
**open**, *adj.*, *apêto*.  
**open**, *vb.*, *apríre*.\*  
**or**, *o*; **ten or so**: *see 40*.  
**order**, *n.*, *órdine, m.*; **in** — **that**,  
*perchè*.  
**order**, *vb.*, *comandáre*.  
**other**, — **one**, *áltro*; **each** —: *see 47, 2 and 51 (f)*.  
**ought**: I —, *dovréi*.  
**out**, *fuôri*; **go** —, *uscíre* \*; **put** —,  
*spégnere*.\*  
**outside**, *di fuôri*.  
**owe**, *dovére*.\*  
**own**, *prôprio*.

## P

**pain**, *dolére*.\*  
**pair**, *páio*.



paper, cárta.  
 pardon, perdonáre.  
 parlor, salóttó.  
 past, passáto; **half** — **two**, le dúc  
   e mêzzo.  
 patience, paziênza.  
 pay, pagáre.  
 peasant, contadíno.  
 pen, pénna.  
 pencil, matíta.  
 perfectly, perfèttaménte.  
 perhaps, fórse.  
 person, persóna.  
 persuade, persuadére.\*  
 photograph, fotografia.  
 picture, quádro.  
 place, *n.*, pósto.  
 place, *vb.*, pórrre.\*  
 please, piacére.\*  
 pleasure, piacére, *m.*  
 pocket, tásca.  
 poem, poesía.  
 polite, gentíle.  
 poor, pôvero.  
 pope, pápa, *m.*  
 porter, facchíno.  
 praise, lodáre.  
 prefer, preferíre.  
 present, presentáre.  
 press, prémere.  
 pretty, bello.  
 prisoner, prigioníero.  
 probably, probabilménte.  
 promise, prométtere.\*  
 protect, protèggere.\*  
 provided, purchè.  
 public, púbblico.  
 push, spíngere.\*  
 put, (*lessons 28 and 30*) mèttere\*;  
   (*lessons 32 and 34*) pórrre\*; —  
 out, spègnere.\*

## Q

queen, regína.  
 quick, súbito.

## R

rain, piôvere.\*  
 read, lêggere.\*  
 ready, prónto.  
 really, veraménte.  
 recall, ricordáre.  
 receive, ricévere.  
 recognize, conóscere.\*  
 red, rôsso.  
 remain, rimanére.\*  
 Renaissance, Rinasciménto.  
 repeat, ripèttere.  
 respect, rispèttáre.  
 return, tornáre.  
 right, dirítto; — **hand**, dèstra; **be**  
   —, avér\* ragióne.  
 rise, sórgere.\*  
 river, fiúme, *m.*  
 Rome, Róma.  
 room, stánza.  
 rose, rôsa.  
 round, rotóndo.  
 run, córrere.\*  
 Russia, Rússia.

## S

sacristan, sagrestáno.  
 say, díre.\*  
 scene, scèna.  
 school, scuôla.  
 search, cercáre.  
 seated, sedúto;,  
 see, vedére.\*  
 seek, cercáre.  
 seem, parére.\*

self, stéssu.  
 send, mandáre.  
 sentence, frásu, *f.*  
 September, settèmbre, *m.*  
 servant, servitóre, *m.*  
 serve, servíre.  
 several, parécchi.  
 sew, cucíre.\*  
 shake, scuòtere.\*  
 shoe, scárpa.  
 shop, bottéga.  
 short, córtu.  
 shoulder, spállu.  
 show, mostráre.  
 shut, chiúdere.\*  
 sick, maláto.  
 sight, vísta.  
 silent, silenzióso; **be** —, tacére.\*  
 since, (*causal*) poichè; (*temporal*)  
     dacchè.  
 sincere, sincêro.  
 sing, cantáre.  
 sir, signóre, *m.*  
 sister, sorèlla.  
 sit, — down, sedére.\*  
 site, síto.  
 sleep, dormíre.  
 small, píccolo.  
 smile, sorrídere.\*  
 smoke, fúmo.  
 snow, *n.*, néve, *f.*  
 snow, *vb.*, nevicáre.  
 so, cosí; **so much**, tántu; **I think**  
     so, lo crédo; **ten or so**: *see* 40.  
 some, alcúno, quálche, *ne*: *see* 89.  
 someone, qualcúno.  
 something, quálche còsa.  
 song, cántu.  
 sonnet, sonétto.  
 soon, prèsto; **as** — **as**, súbito che.  
 speak, parláre.

spend, (*of money*) spêndere\*;  
     (*of time*) passáre.  
 square, piázza.  
 stand, stáre.\*  
 start, partíre.  
 station, stazióne, *f.*  
 stay, (*lesson 15*) restáre; (*lesson 24*  
     *and later lessons*) rimanére.\*  
 still, *adj.*, quiêto; **keep** —, tacére.\*  
 still, *adv.*, ancóra.  
 stocking, cálza.  
 street, vía.  
 student, studènte, *m.*  
 study, *n.*, stúdio.  
 study, *vb.*, studiáre.  
 such a, un tále.  
 suffer, soffríre.\*  
 summer, estáte, *f.*  
 sun, sóle, *m.*  
 Sunday, doménica.  
 sure, sicúro.  
 surprise, *n.*, sorprésa.  
 surprise, *vb.*, sorprendere\*; **be**  
     surprised, meravigliársi.  
 surrender, rëndersi.\*  
 surround, cingere.\*  
 swear, giuráre.  
 sword, spáda.  
 syllable, síllaba.

## T

table, távola.  
 take, prèndere\*; (= *take away*)  
     tògliere\*; (= *accompany, lead*)  
     menáre; — **care**, badáre; —  
     **off**, leváre; **it takes**, ci vuòle.\*  
 talk, parláre.  
 tall, álto.  
 telephone, telefonáre.  
 tell, (*lessons 13-17*) raccontáre;  
     (*lessons 35-40*) díre.\*

**than**, che, di: *see* 33.  
**thank**, ringraziare.  
**that**, *conj.*, che; **in order** —, perchè.  
**that**, *pron.*, quello, ciò, che: *see* 42 and 44; — **one**, quello.  
**theatre**, teatro.  
**then**, poi.  
**there**, là, vi, ci: *see* 84; — **is**: *see note on p. 109.*  
**thing**, cosa.  
**think**, (= *meditate*) pensare; (= *suppose*) credere.  
**this**, questo; — **one**, questo; **in** — **way**, così; — **morning**, stamane; — **evening**, stasera.  
**though**, però.  
**thousand**, migliaio.  
**through**, per.  
**ticket**, biglietto.  
**time**, tempo, volta: *see note on p. III.*  
**to**, a; (*before the name of a country*) in; (*in special cases*) da, di, per; **according to**, secondo; **be about to**, stare \* per. *For to before an infinitive, see 79 (b); for to with an unemphatic personal pronoun, see 47-50.*  
**today**, oggi.  
**tomorrow**, domani; **day after** —, domán l' áltro.  
**too**, — **much**, troppo; **he** —, anche lui.  
**toward**, verso.  
**tower**, torre, f.  
**train**, treno.  
**travel**, viaggiare.  
**tree**, álbero.  
**true**, véro.  
**trunk**, baúle, m.

**try**, cercare.  
**turn**, (*intransitive*) volgersi\*; (*transitive*) volgere.\*

U

**umbrella**, ombrello.  
**under**, sotto.  
**understand**, capire.  
**until**, *conj.*, finchè non; *prep.* fino a.  
**up**, su; **up to**, fino a; **go up**, salire.\*

V

**vase**, vaso.  
**Venice**, Venèzia.  
**very**, — **much**, molto.  
**Victor**, Vittório.  
**view**, vista.  
**villa**, villa.  
**village**, villaggio.  
**visit**, visitare.  
**vote**, votare.

W

**wait**, — **for**, aspettare.  
**wake**, svegliare.  
**walk**, camminare.  
**wall**, muro.  
**want**, volere.\*  
**warm**, caldo.  
**waste**, sprecare.  
**watch**, guardare.  
**water**, acqua.  
**way**, via; **in this** —, così.  
**weather**, tempo.  
**week**, settimana.  
**weep**, piangere.\*  
**well**, bene.  
**what**, *interj.*, come.

**what**, *pron.*, *quéllo* che, che, che  
*côsa*: see 42-44.  
**when**, *quándo*.  
**where**, *dóve*.  
**wherever**, *dovúnque*.  
**which**, che, *quále*: see 43 and 44.  
**while**, *méntre*.  
**white**, *biáncô*.  
**who**, *chi*, che: see 43 and 44; **one**  
—, *chi*; **whom**, *cúí*.  
**whole**, *intêro*; **the** —, *tútto il*.  
**whose**, *di chi*.  
**why**, *perchè*.  
**wife**, *móglie*, *f.*  
**willing**: be —, *volére.\**  
**wind**, *vênto*.  
**window**, *finêstra*.  
**winter**, *invêrno*.  
**wish**, *volére.\**  
**with**, *con*.  
**without**, *sênza*; (*before a disjunctive pronoun*) *sênza di*.  
**woman**, *dônna*.

**wont**: be —, *solére.\**  
**wood**, *bôsko*.  
**word**, *parôla*.  
**work**, *n.*, *lavóro*; (*literary work*)  
*ôpera*.  
**work**, *vb.*, *lavoráre*.  
**worse**, *pêggio*.  
**worth**: be —, *valére.\**  
**worthy**, *dégno*.  
**write**, *scrivere.\**  
**writer**, *scrittóre*, *m.*  
**wrong**: be —, *avér\* tórto*.

## Y

**year**, *ánno*.  
**yellow**, *giállo*.  
**yes**, *sì*.  
**yesterday**, *iêri*.  
**yet**, *ancóra*; (= *nevertheless*) *ep-  
púre*.  
**yield**, *cêdere*.  
**young**, *gióvane*.

# INDEX

[The numbers refer to paragraphs. *Ad. N.* means the Additional Notes on Pronunciation printed on pp. 6-10.]

- a** (letter): 2; *Ad. N.*, 2.  
**a** (preposition): 79; 79, *b, h*.  
 Accent: 7; *Ad. N.* (pp. 9, 10); 47;  
     48; 84; 92, *e*.  
 Accents: 3; 7.  
 Address (forms of): 52.  
 Adjectives: 26-34.  
     Comparison: 31-34; gender:  
         26; 28; number: 26; 29;  
         position: 27; used as nouns:  
         20; 30.  
 Adverbs: 80-85.  
     **ci, vi**: 47, *a*; 84; comparison:  
         80, 2; manner: 85; **ne**: 47,  
         3, *a*; 56, *b*; 'never': 83;  
         'not,' **non**: 80, 1; 81; 91, *a*;  
         'only': 82; position: 80, 1;  
         'so': 85, *a*.  
 'All': 87.  
 Alphabet: 1; *Ad. N.*, 1.  
**altrui**: 91, *d*.  
 'Any': 88.  
 Articles: 9-16.  
 Augmentatives: 35-37.  
 Auxiliary verbs: 53-57.  
     **avere**: 53, *b*; 54, 3; **essere**: 53,  
         *a*; 54, 1, 3; compound  
         tenses: 54; 56; modal aux-  
         iliaries: 57.  
**avere**: 53, *b*; 54, 3; 54, *b*; 92, 5.  
 'Be': 53, *a*; 54, 1, 3; 54, *a, c, d, f*;  
     92, 126.  
**bello**: 29, *c*.  
 'Both': 38, 4; 91.  
**buono**: 29, *c*.  
 'Can': see Modal Auxiliaries.  
**ci** (adv.): 47, *a*; 84.  
**ci** (pron.): 47-50.  
 Close Vowels: 3; *Ad. N.*, 3.  
 Comparison: 31-34; 80, 2.  
     Adjectives: 31-34; adverbs:  
         80, 2; irregular: 31, *a*;  
         80, 2.  
 Compound Tenses: 54; 56; 73; 75.  
 Conditional: see Past Future.  
 Conjugation: 53-68; 92.  
     First: 59; second: 60; third:  
         60; fourth: 61; variations:  
         63; 66, *a*; 68; irregular  
         verbs: 64-68; 92; auxiliary  
         verbs: 53-57; compound  
         tenses: 54; 56; compound  
         verbs: 67, *a*; 93, *a*.  
 Conjunctions: 78.  
     With subjunctive: 77, *d*; 78,  
         *a, b*.  
 Consonants: 4-6; *Ad. N.*, 4-6.  
 Contraction: 12; 23 <sup>(2)</sup>; 50 <sup>(1)</sup>;  
     63, *d*; 65; 66, 1; 68, *a*.

- da:** 79, *c, f, g*.  
**Dates:** 38, *b*; 39, *b, c*.  
**Definite Article:** 10-13.  
     Form: 10-12; use: 12, *a*; 13;  
         38, *b*; 39, *a*; 45; 69; 70.  
**di:** 12; 17; 79, *b, 3, f, h, j*.  
**Diminutives:** 35-37.  
**'Do':** 54, *g*.  
**Double Letters:** 6.  
**Doubling:** Ad. N., 6; 48, *d*; 93, *a*.  
  
**e (letter):** 3; Ad. N., 3; 68, *i, j*.  
**e (conjunction):** 78; 78, *c*.  
**ecco:** 48, *e*; 84, *a*.  
**essere:** 53, *a*; 54, 1, 3; 54, *a, c, d*;  
     92, 126.  
**Exclamations:** Ad. N (p. 10); 43,  
     *b*; 79, *b*.  
  
**'For':** 79, *e*.  
**Fractions:** 39, *d*.  
**Future:** 54, 2; 68, *c*; 74; 77.  
     Contracted: 65; 66, 1.  
  
**Gender:** 9-11; 14-15; 18-21; 26;  
     28.  
**grande:** 29, *c*.  
  
**h:** 4; 22, *a*; 23, *a, c*; 59, *a*.  
**'Have':** 53, *b*; 54, 3; 54, *b, h*; 57,  
     *a*; 92, 5.  
**'Here':** 84.  
  
**i (letter):** 2; 2, *a*; 4; Ad. N., 2; 22,  
     *b*; 23, *b*; 59, *a*; 60; 92, *f*.  
**i (euphonic):** 79; 81.  
**Imperative:** 66, *b*; 72; 77, *a*.  
**Imperfect:** see Past Descriptive.  
**Impersonal Verbs:** 51; 51, *h*; 77, *c*.  
**Indefinite Article:** 14-16.  
     Form: 14-15; use: 16; 38, 1;  
         43, *b*.  
  
**Infinitive:** 48, *b*; 58; 69-72.  
     Contracted: 65.  
**Inflections of the Voice:** see p. 9.  
**Interrogation:** see Questions.  
**issimo (suffix):** 35, *a*.  
**'It':** 47; 51; 51, *h*.  
  
**Letters:** 1; Ad. N., 1.  
  
**'May':** see Modal Auxiliaries.  
**Modal Auxiliaries:** 57.  
**Moods:** 57; 69-77; 78, *a*.  
     Conditional: see Past Future.  
     Imperative: 66, *b*; 72; 77, *a*;  
         infinitive: 48, *b*; 58; 65; 69-  
         72; participle: 54, *a, b*; 62;  
         63, *d*; 69-71; subjunctive:  
         44, *c*; 77; 78, *a*.  
**'Must':** see Modal Auxiliaries.  
**'Myself,' 'thysel,' etc.:** 47, 2;  
     51, *e*.  
  
**ne (adv.):** 47, *a*; 56, *b*; 84.  
**ne (pron.):** 47, 3; 48; 49; 88; 89.  
**Neuter Verbs:** 54, 3; 56, *a*.  
**'Never':** 83.  
**non:** 80, 1; 81; 91, *a*.  
**'Not':** 80, 1; 81.  
**Nouns:** 17-25.  
     Gender: 18-21; number: 22  
         25.  
     Number: 9-11; 22-25; 29.  
     Numerals: 38-40.  
         Cardinal: 38; ordinal: 39.  
  
**o (letter):** 3; Ad. N., 3; 59, *b*.  
**o (conjunction):** 78; 78, *c*.  
**Old Forms:** Ad. N., 3, *f*; 12 (2);  
     23 (2); 44, *a*; 47 (1); 48, *d*;  
     50 (1); 63, *d*; 68; 92; 93. \_

- 'One' (indefinite): 55; 86.  
 'Only': 82.  
 Open Vowels: 3; Ad. N., 3.  
 'Ought': see Modal Auxiliaries.
- Participle: 54, *a, b*; 62; 63, *d*; 69-71.  
     Past: 54, *a, b*; 63, *d*; 71, *c*;  
         present: 62; 69-71.  
 Partitive: 12, *a*; 88; 89.  
 Passive: 54, 1; 54, *f*; 55; 56, *c*.  
 Past Absolute: 60; 65; 66, 2, 3; 68, *d, e*; 75.  
 Past Descriptive:  
     Form: 63, 63, *c*; 65; 68, *a, h*;  
         use: 54, *d, e*; 73; 75.  
 Past Future: 54, 2; 68, *b*; 76; 77;  
     92, *c*.  
     Contracted: 65; 66, 1; 92, *c*.  
 Past Perfect: see Perfect Tenses.  
 Perfect Tenses: 54, 3; 56; 73; 75.  
 Personal Pronouns: 46-52.  
     Conjunctive: 47-50; form: 47;  
         48, *c, d*; 50; 52, 1; position:  
         48; 49.  
     Disjunctive: 51-52; omission:  
         51, 2; 51, *h*; use: 51; 51, 1;  
         51, *a, b, h*.  
 Pitch: see p. 9.  
 Pluperfect: see Perfect Tenses.  
 Plural: 22-25; 29.  
     Irregular: 23, *d*; 25; words in  
         -co and -go: 23, *c*.  
 Poetic Forms: see Old Forms.  
 Possessive: 17; 45; 52, 1.  
 Prefixes: 93, *a*.  
 Prepositions: 79.  
     da: 79, *c, f, g*.  
     'to': 79, *a, b*.  
 Present: 65; 66, 4; 68, *f, g*;  
     73; 74.
- Preterit: see Past Absolute.  
 Preterit Perfect: see Second Past Perfect.  
 Pronouns: 41-52; 86-91.  
     Demonstrative: 42; indefinite:  
         86-91; interrogative, 43;  
         personal: see Personal; pos-  
         sessive: see Possessive; re-  
         ciprocal: see Reciprocal;  
         reflexive: see Reflexive;  
         relative: 44.  
 Pronunciation: 1-8; Ad. N.
- qualche: 29, *b*; 89.  
 Quantity: 2; Ad. N., 2.  
 Questions: Ad. N. (p. 10); 43; 51,  
     2; 77, *f, g*; 79, *b*; 81, *a*.
- Reciprocal Pronouns and Verbs:  
     47, 2; 48; 49; 50; 51, 3; 51,  
     *f*; 52, 1; 56, *b*.  
 Reflexive Pronouns: 47, 2; 48; 49;  
     50; 51, 3; 52, 1; 55; 56, *b*;  
     63, *a*; 86.  
 Reflexive Verbs: 55; 56, *b*; 63, *a*;  
     86.
- santo: 29, *c*.  
 Second Past Perfect: 54, 3; 75.  
 'Shall': 54, 2; 57.  
 'Should': 54, 2; 57; 76; 77.  
 si: 47-50; 52; 55; 56, *b*; 63,  
     *a*; 86.  
 'So': 85, *a*.  
 'Some': 89.  
 Spelling: 1-8.  
 Subjunctive: 44, *c*; 77; 78, *a*.  
 Suffixes: Ad. N., 3; 35-37; 85.  
 Syllables: 8.

## Tenses:

Compound: 54; 56; 73; 75.

Future: see Future; imperfect: see Past Descriptive; past absolute: see Past Absolute; past descriptive: see Past Descriptive; present: see Present; preterit: see Past Absolute.

'Than': 33.

'There': 84.

Time of day: 38, *c*.'To': 79, *a*, *b*.**u** (letter): 2; 2, *a*; 4; Ad. N., 2.

Verbs: 53-77; 92; 93.

Auxiliary verbs: see Auxiliary;  
conjugation: see Conjugation;

tion; lists of irregular verbs: 92; 93; alphabetical: 93; by conjugations: 92; moods: see Moods; tenses: see Tenses; regular verbs: 55-56; 59-63; irregular verbs: 64-68; 92; regular parts: 66; compound verbs: 67, *a*; 93, *a*; old forms: 63, *d*; 68; 92.

**vi** (adv.): 47, *a*; 84.

Vowels: 2-3; Ad. N., 2-3.

'Whatever': 44, *c*.'Whoever': 44, *c*.

'Will': 54, 2; 57.

'Would': 54, 2; 54, *e*; 57; 76; **77**.

'You': 52; 86.









14 [REDACTED]

RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

## CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

[REDACTED] books are subject to immediate recall.

REC. CIR. JUN 18 '76

REC. CIR. FEB 4 1980

JUL 1 1980

REC. CIR. DEC 19 1985

JUL 19 1986

RECEIVED

JUL 7 1986

CIRCULATION DEPT.

LD21—32m—1,'75  
(S3845L)4970

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY



8000773113

